

# **Generating Natural Language Descriptions with Integrated Text and Examples**

by

**Vibhu O. Mittal**  
USC/Information Sciences Institute  
4676 Admiralty Way  
Marina del Rey, CA 90292-6695

September 1993  
ISI/RR-93-392

This document has been approved  
for public release and sale; its  
distribution is unlimited.

A Dissertation Presented to the  
FACULTY OF THE GRADUATE SCHOOL  
UNIVERSITY OF SOUTHERN CALIFORNIA

In Partial Fulfillment of the  
Requirements for the Degree  
DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY  
(Computer Science)

Copyright 1994 Vibhu Omprakash Mittal

19941215 248



## GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR COMPLETING SF 298

The Report Documentation Page (RDP) is used in announcing and cataloging reports. It is important that this information be consistent with the rest of the report, particularly the cover and title page. Instructions for filling in each block of the form follow. It is important to stay within the lines to meet optical scanning requirements.

### Block 1. Agency Use Only (Leave blank).

**Block 2. Report Date.** Full publication date including day, month, and year, if available (e.g. 1 Jan 88). Must cite at least the year.

**Block 3. Type of Report and Dates Covered.** State whether report is interim, final, etc. If applicable, enter inclusive report dates (e.g. 10 Jun 87 - 30 Jun 88).

**Block 4. Title and Subtitle.** A title is taken from the part of the report that provides the most meaningful and complete information. When a report is prepared in more than one volume, repeat the primary title, add volume number, and include subtitle for the specific volume. On classified documents enter the title classification in parentheses.

**Block 5. Funding Numbers.** To include contract and grant numbers; may include program element number(s), project number(s), task number(s), and work unit number(s). Use the following labels:

C - Contract	PR - Project
G - Grant	TA - Task
PE - Program Element	WU - Work Unit Accession No.

**Block 6. Author(s).** Name(s) of person(s) responsible for writing the report, performing the research, or credited with the content of the report. If editor or compiler, this should follow the name(s).

**Block 7. Performing Organization Name(s) and Address(es).** Self-explanatory.

**Block 8. Performing Organization Report Number.** Enter the unique alphanumeric report number(s) assigned by the organization performing the report.

**Block 9. Sponsoring/Monitoring Agency Name(s) and Address(es).** Self-explanatory

**Block 10. Sponsoring/Monitoring Agency Report Number.** (If known)

**Block 11. Supplementary Notes.** Enter information not included elsewhere such as: Prepared in cooperation with...; Trans. of ...; To be published in... When a report is revised, include a statement whether the new report supersedes or supplements the older report.

**Block 12a. Distribution/Availability Statement.** Denotes public availability or limitations. Cite any availability to the public. Enter additional limitations or special markings in all capitals (e.g. NOFORN, REL, ITAR).

DOD - See DoDD 5230.24, "Distribution Statements on Technical Documents."

DOE - See authorities.

NASA - See Handbook NHB 2200.2.

NTIS - Leave blank.

### Block 12b. Distribution Code.

DOD - Leave blank.

DOE - Enter DOE distribution categories from the Standard Distribution for Unclassified Scientific and Technical Reports.

NASA - Leave blank.

NTIS - Leave blank.

**Block 13. Abstract.** Include a brief (Maximum 200 words) factual summary of the most significant information contained in the report.

**Block 14. Subject Terms.** Keywords or phrases identifying major subjects in the report.

**Block 15. Number of Pages.** Enter the total number of pages.

**Block 16. Price Code.** Enter appropriate price code (NTIS only).

**Blocks 17.-19. Security Classifications.** Self-explanatory. Enter U.S. Security Classification in accordance with U.S. Security Regulations (i.e., UNCLASSIFIED). If form contains classified information, stamp classification on the top and bottom of the page.

**Block 20. Limitation of Abstract.** This block must be completed to assign a limitation to the abstract. Enter either UL (unlimited) or SAR (same as report). An entry in this block is necessary if the abstract is to be limited. If blank, the abstract is assumed to be unlimited.

## Acknowledgements

I would like to thank the many people who made this thesis possible:

Cecile Paris: my advisor, whose invaluable guidance and perceptive insight made my task possible; her mania for perfection constantly drove me crazy when writing, but I've come to appreciate it now. For developing the text planner: it made my task so much easier. For being truly human! I shall miss her as I leave ISI, and I owe her more than this paragraph can say.

Bill Swartout: for getting me to USC and ISI; for getting me involved with NLG and explanation generation. My one big regret is that I did not get a chance to work with him more.

Ramesh Patil: always there to help debug any intricate piece of code, or offer advice on how things should be represented. His detailed suggestions on (re)writing my thesis helped make it far more lucid. His stories about IIT and MIT were always entertaining and enlightening and helped relieve many a dull day. For being supportive and nice at times of stress.

Paul Rosenbloom: for agreeing to be on my committee at short notice and for being extremely helpful in many ways, ranging from literature pointers to job opportunities. I hope that I can be as considerate to somebody someday as he was to me.

Vijay Kumar: for agreeing to replace Allen Munro (who had agreed to replace Dan Moldovan) at a moment's notice. He helped rescue me from the bureaucracy and red tape.

My family: first and foremost, my parents, who have always encouraged me to study, and never lost faith, even when I seemed to be taking forever; my brother and sister, Ravi and Madhu, for encouragement and moral support, and last, but not the least, my wife Sujata for being a cheery ray of sunshine in my life and prodding me work half as hard as she did.

All the people who made the environment here the way it is: Yolanda Gil and Kevin Knight, who were always ready to help, and offer advice on a variety of things, ranging from where to live in Pittsburgh to why I should not forget to send an application to MIT! They've been more than helpful; they've been among our best friends.

Linda Louie, our librarian par excellence: she always managed to get me any thesis, technical report or book, however arcane, outdated or under-specified it might have been; Jeanne Beharry and Kary Lau, who helped me do my paperwork right; Lisa Moses for being so incredibly helpful when I came here. I shall miss them, as I shall miss all of the other great people here in the division.

# CONTENTS

<b>Acknowledgements</b>	ii
<b>Abstract</b>	x
<b>1 Introduction</b>	1
1.1 The Need for Documentation	2
1.1.1 Documentation: The Need for Examples	2
1.1.2 Documentation: The Effectiveness of Examples	4
1.2 Examples and the Textual Description	4
1.3 The System and the Application Domain	6
1.4 Contributions of the thesis	7
1.5 Organization of the thesis	7
<b>2 Related Work</b>	9
2.1 Intelligent Tutoring Systems	9
2.1.1 The Constrained Example Generator -- CEG	10
2.1.2 Reasoning with Hypothetical Examples -- HYPO	10
2.1.3 Presenting Context Dependent Examples -- WEST	11
2.1.4 Lessons Learnt	11
2.2 Cognitive Science and Educational Psychology	12
2.2.1 The Direct Instruction Model	12
2.2.2 Adaptive Presentation Strategies	13
2.2.3 Cognitive Load Theory	14
2.2.4 Examples and Explanations	14
2.2.5 Summary	15
2.3 Machine Learning	15
2.3.1 Learning from Near-Misses -- ARCH	16
	iii

2.3.2	Version Spaces	16
2.3.3	Generating Examples -- LEX	16
2.3.4	Importance of Example Sequences -- SIERRA	17
2.3.5	Relationships between Machine Learning and Documentation	17
2.4	Discussion	17
<b>3</b>	<b>Issues in the Integration of Text and Examples</b>	<b>19</b>
3.1	Corpus Analysis	19
3.2	Issues in Integration	20
3.3	When should an example be generated?	21
3.4	Retrieval vs. Construction of Examples	21
3.5	The Number of Examples	22
3.6	The Order of Presentation of the Examples	24
3.7	Positioning of the Example and the Description	27
3.8	Prompt Generation for the Examples	30
3.9	Summary	31
<b>4</b>	<b>A Categorization of Example Types</b>	<b>32</b>
4.1	The Need for Categorizing Examples	32
4.2	Previous Work on Categorizing Examples	32
4.3	The Need for Categorizing Examples in Context	33
4.3.1	The First Dimension: The Relationship between the Example and the Description	34
4.3.2	The Second Dimension: The Text Type	35
4.3.3	The Third Dimension: The Knowledge Type	38
4.4	Discussion	39
<b>5</b>	<b>The System Implementation</b>	<b>41</b>
5.1	The Text Planner	41
5.1.1	Plan Operators	43
5.2	The Knowledge Representation	44
5.3	The Example Generator	47
5.3.1	Construction of Examples	47
5.3.2	Determining Critical Features	50
5.3.3	Determining Variable Features	53

5.3.4	Finding Interesting Negative Examples . . . . .	54
5.3.5	Example Complexity and Sequencing . . . . .	54
5.3.6	Generating Prompts . . . . .	57
5.4	Status of the System . . . . .	58
<b>6</b>	<b>Generating Integrated Natural Language Descriptions</b>	<b>59</b>
6.1	A Purely Textual Description of a LIST . . . . .	59
6.2	Communicating a Description of a LIST solely through Examples . . . . .	62
6.3	Generating an Integrated Description of a LIST . . . . .	65
6.4	Discussion . . . . .	69
<b>7</b>	<b>Negative Examples and their Effect on Explanations</b>	<b>74</b>
7.1	A Documentation Example from INTEND . . . . .	74
7.2	Plan Operators . . . . .	77
7.3	Generating the Documentation on Predicate-Relation-Form . . . . .	78
7.4	Discussion . . . . .	82
<b>8</b>	<b>The Effect of the Text Type on Descriptions</b>	<b>86</b>
8.1	The Need to Vary Descriptions . . . . .	86
8.2	The Notion of a Text Type . . . . .	87
8.3	Integrating Examples: Issues Related to the Text Type . . . . .	88
8.4	Introductory versus Advanced Texts . . . . .	88
8.5	Positioning the Examples . . . . .	90
8.5.1	Effect of the Placement on Comprehension . . . . .	90
8.5.2	Determining the Placement of the Examples . . . . .	92
8.5.3	Effect of the Positioning on the Other Factors . . . . .	94
8.6	A Trace of the system . . . . .	96
8.6.1	Text Type: Introductory . . . . .	96
8.6.2	Text Type: Advanced . . . . .	96
8.7	Discussion . . . . .	100
<b>9</b>	<b>Evaluation</b>	<b>103</b>
9.1	Evaluating the Output . . . . .	103
9.2	Evaluating the Issues . . . . .	104

9.2.1	Descriptions With and Without Examples . . . . .	106
9.2.2	Positioning the Example . . . . .	106
9.2.3	Presentation of Different Example Types . . . . .	107
9.2.4	On the Complexity and Number of Examples . . . . .	109
9.2.5	Order of Presentation of the Examples . . . . .	109
9.2.6	On the Need for Prompts . . . . .	113
9.3	Discussion . . . . .	113
<b>10</b>	<b>Conclusions and Future Work</b>	<b>115</b>
10.1	Contributions . . . . .	115
10.2	Limitations of the Work . . . . .	116
10.3	Future Work . . . . .	117
<b>A</b>	<b>Descriptions of a list in different books</b>	<b>130</b>
A.1	Description 1 . . . . .	130
A.2	Description 2 . . . . .	131
A.3	Description 3 . . . . .	131
A.4	Description 4 . . . . .	132
A.5	Description 5 . . . . .	132
A.6	Description 6 . . . . .	133
A.7	Description 7 . . . . .	134
<b>B</b>	<b>The Heuristics used in the System</b>	<b>135</b>
<b>C</b>	<b>The Text Plan Operators</b>	<b>138</b>
<b>D</b>	<b>Descriptions in the LISP domain planned by the system</b>	<b>153</b>

## LIST OF FIGURES

1.1	Descriptions with, and without, examples. . . . .	3
1.2	Example of textual elision due to examples. . . . .	5
1.3	A block diagram of the overall system. . . . .	6
1.4	A description of the concept list using examples. . . . .	7
3.1	Examples often contain many other details. . . . .	23
3.2	Examples from advanced, reference manual type texts are complex and multi-featured. . . . .	24
3.3	It is important to order examples based on their complexity. . . . .	25
3.4	Sequences carry implicit information in example sequences. . . . .	26
3.5	Bad sequencing can cause loss of information content. . . . .	26
3.6	Example of textual elision due to examples. . . . .	28
3.7	A description of list using examples. . . . .	28
3.8	A description with a large number of examples of the functions CAR and CDR. . . . .	29
3.9	Alternative description for the functions CAR and CDR. . . . .	29
3.10	Prompts are often used in examples. . . . .	30
3.11	Prompts can be indicated through the use of bold typefaces. . . . .	31
4.1	Two examples about a list. . . . .	34
4.2	Introductory examples are usually single featured. . . . .	36
4.3	Intermediate 'use' oriented examples. . . . .	37
4.4	Reference documentation has fewer, more complex examples. . . . .	38
4.5	Examples of a relation. . . . .	38
4.6	The three dimensions used in categorization. . . . .	39
5.1	A block diagram of the overall system. . . . .	42
5.2	Sample Text Plan Operator. . . . .	43
5.3	A snapshot of the system interface. . . . .	45

5.4	A fragment of the EES grammar. . . . .	46
5.5	Representing BNF productions in LOOM. . . . .	46
5.6	Description of a list in POPART. . . . .	48
5.7	Description of a list in LOOM. . . . .	48
5.8	The predicate used by LOOM to check for a list. . . . .	48
5.9	LOOM description of a list. . . . .	48
5.10	Determining the Critical Features of a Concept in BNF. . . . .	51
5.11	Some negative examples are more interesting than others. . . . .	54
5.12	Determining syntactic complexity of a term in the BNF domain. . . . .	55
6.1	Top level Plan Operators to describe Objects. . . . .	60
6.2	Plan skeleton for listing the main features of a list. . . . .	62
6.3	A purely textual description of a list. . . . .	63
6.4	Plan Operator to generate example-only descriptions. . . . .	65
6.5	Text Plan Generated for the Examples-Only description of a list. . . . .	66
6.6	Output generated in the examples-only mode of a list description. . . . .	67
6.7	Text Plan for a Description of a list with both text and examples. . . . .	70
6.8	Skeletal text plan for elaborating on the data-elements. . . . .	71
6.9	Intermediate form used by the sentence realizer in generating the integrated description. . . . .	72
6.10	Output generated in the text-and-examples mode of a list's description. . . . .	73
7.1	A fragment of the grammar for the INTEND plan language in EES. . . . .	75
7.2	The documentation for 'predicate-form'. . . . .	75
7.3	Text Plan operators used in in presenting Examples. . . . .	78
7.4	A skeletal fragment of the text plan generated for the initial text. . . . .	79
7.5	Plan fragment for the predicate-relation-form. . . . .	82
7.6	Text-plan fragment for the generation of the examples for the critical feature. . . . .	83
7.7	Documentation for predicate-relation-form with Examples. . . . .	84
7.8	A snap-shot of the system generating documentation. . . . .	85
8.1	A description of list in an introductory text. . . . .	87
8.2	A description of list from a reference manual. . . . .	87
8.3	Brief description of differences between examples in introductory and advanced texts. . . . .	90
8.4	Introductory Text: Examples within the description. . . . .	91

8.5	Intermediate Text: Examples often occur before an explanation. . . . .	92
8.6	Advanced Text: Examples usually occur after the description. . . . .	92
8.7	Three descriptions of a list in different text types. . . . .	93
8.8	Algorithm for determining the placement of examples in a description. . . . .	94
8.9	Skeletal plan for listing main features of list. . . . .	97
8.10	Skeletal plan for generating examples of lists. . . . .	97
8.11	Generation of an introductory description of a list. . . . .	98
8.12	Text plan for the reference manual description of a list. . . . .	101
8.13	A snap-shot of the system's description of the advanced description of a list. . . . .	102
9.1	Descriptions with and without Examples. . . . .	105
9.2	Questionnaire on GENSYM used to test effectiveness of examples. . . . .	106
9.3	Description with examples after the description. . . . .	107
9.4	Description with examples within the description. . . . .	108
9.5	Description with anomalous examples not explicitly marked. . . . .	110
9.6	Description with anomalous examples clearly marked. . . . .	110
9.7	Descriptions with simple and complex examples. . . . .	111
9.8	The description of a list, with no ordering on the examples. . . . .	112
9.9	Example used in testing the effect of prompts. . . . .	112
9.10	Output generated by code in Figure 9.9. . . . .	113
10.1	Explanation of a let-form planned by the system. . . . .	116

## **Abstract**

Good documentation is critical for user acceptance of any system. Advances in areas such as knowledge-based systems, text generation and multi-media have now made it possible to investigate the automatic generation of documentation from the underlying knowledge bases. Empirical studies have shown that examples can greatly increase the effectiveness of system documentation. However, studies also show that badly integrated text and examples can be actually detrimental compared to using either text or examples alone. It is thus clear that in order to provide useful documentation automatically, a system must be capable of providing well-integrated examples to illustrate its points.

This thesis builds upon previous work in natural language generation, example generation, cognitive and educational psychology to identify relevant issues in the generation of coherent descriptions that integrate text and examples. We identify how text and examples co-constrain each other and show that a system must consider example generation as an integral part of the generation process. We describe an implementation, and present an initial evaluation of the system's effectiveness.

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

Good documentation is critical for user acceptance of any system. Sophisticated on-line help facilities based on hypertext or similar retrieval methods are becoming increasingly common. Advances in areas such as knowledge-based systems, natural language generation (NLG) and multi-media now make it possible to investigate the automatic generation of documentation from the underlying knowledge bases. This has several important benefits: it is easily accessible; it avoids frequent problems of inconsistency, as the information presented is obtained directly from the underlying representation; and not the least, it can take the communication context, such as the user, into account.

This thesis makes the following claims: examples are necessary in effective explanations; examples cannot just be presented as an after thought, but must be well integrated with the accompanying explanation; a text planning mechanism that plans text in terms of communicative goals can be used to generate explanations that integrate text and examples effectively if the examples are treated as an integral part of the planning process and their effect on the rest of the discourse is taken into account. In this thesis, we describe the generation of descriptions of the syntax/surface structure for constructs in programming languages. Even though the underlying semantics are not taken into account, the descriptions illustrate important ways in which the text and examples constrain each other.

This thesis brings together results from cognitive psychology and education on effective presentation of examples, as well as work on computational generation of examples from intelligent tutoring systems. It also takes into account work in machine learning on computational learning from examples, and a characterization of good examples for this purpose. We present our own analysis of a corpus of instructional and explanatory texts to identify the different ways in which examples interact with the surrounding text. We analyse relevant issues and derive a set of heuristics to generate effective descriptions that integrate both text and examples. We then describe an implemented text generation system that plans presentations of integrated text and examples by taking these factors into account.

The rest of this chapter presents the motivation for the work: (i) the need for documentation in the understanding and user acceptance of complex systems; (ii) the use of examples to enhance comprehension, and their use in documentation, and (iii) the interaction between the generation of text and examples in a description, as each constrains the other in several ways, and ignoring these interactions and constraints can lead to reduced understandability.

After this background, this chapter concludes by briefly outlining the contributions of the work, and the organization of the thesis in terms of the chapters that follow.

## 1.1 The Need for Documentation

*Documentation of programs is one of the most vital and the most abused aspects of data processing.*

*-- P. W. Williams (1977)  
U.S. Comptroller-General*

Good documentation is a critical factor in user acceptance of any complex system. The following excerpt from TIME magazine illustrates the importance of good documentation:

*Coleco lost \$35 million in the fourth quarter last year partly because people flocked to return the initial version of its Adam computer which the company offered for \$600. Coleco blamed much of the consumer dissatisfaction on 'manuals which did not offer the first-time user adequate assistance' ... Coleco has reintroduced the Adam complete with a new instruction manual.*

(Greenwald, 1984)

There are numerous books and articles on writing good documentation, e.g., (Duin, 1990; Beard and Calamars, 1983; Bell and Evans, 1989).<sup>1</sup> These deal with issues ranging from the effect of using different typefaces (Tinker, 1963) and the use of everyday metaphors (Norman, 1988; Doheny-Farina, 1988; Hastings and King, 1986), to the effect of illustrations on user comprehension (Willows and Houghton, 1987a; Willows and Houghton, 1987b). It is notable that in spite of differences in their approach and ideology, all these books either stress the need for examples, or make extensive use of examples themselves to convey their point.

Maintaining consistency between the system and the documentation is an important desiderata. As complex systems evolve over time, in response to bug reports, maintenance fixes, and user requests, often the associated documentation fails to keep up with these changes. Such a situation can lead to documentation that is not useful, and worse, even wrong. Documentation generated by the system from the underlying representation of the system can help mitigate this problem of inconsistency between the documentation and the system's representation.

### 1.1.1 Documentation: The Need for Examples

Examples play an important role in documentation. Consider the two descriptions in Fig. 1.1 for instance. The first description is taken from a book on AI programming (Charniak *et al.*, 1987).<sup>2</sup> The textual explanation for the function is complete (in that it does not omit any facts); however, the second description, with appropriate examples added by us, is far more understandable.<sup>3</sup> In this case, the examples highlight points that may not be immediately obvious from the explanation, such as the concatenation of the print name and the number in the output, the fact that the print-name can be different from the actual output, etc.

---

<sup>1</sup>Other references to writing documentation are (Brockmann, 1990; Brockmann, 1986; Chinell, 1990; Crandall, 1987; Doheny-Farina, 1988; Duffy *et al.*, 1983; Hastings and King, 1986; Horton, 1991; Maynard, 1982; Morgan, 1980; Pakin and Associates, Inc., 1984; Simpson and Casey, 1988; Stuart, 1984; Yoder, 1986; Tinker, 1963; Willows and Houghton, 1987a; Willows and Houghton, 1987b; Norman, 1988).

<sup>2</sup>The initial sentence enclosed in brackets does not explicitly appear in the book, but the description occurs with other function descriptions, and a generic statement such as this, about all the functions, appears before the group.

<sup>3</sup>In an evaluation with about 15 users, we found that *all* of the users found the second description easier to understand compared to the first one.

---

(GENSYM &optional (PREFIX "G"))

[GENSYM is a function call with an optional argument called PREFIX. It] Returns a new, uninterned symbol, whose print name begins with PREFIX and ends with a number; the number is incremented with each call to GENSYM and the default value of PREFIX is reset to whatever is passed as an argument to GENSYM.

From (Charniak *et al.*, 1987), page 404.

---

(GENSYM &optional (PREFIX "G"))

GENSYM is a function call with an optional argument called PREFIX. For example:

```
(GENSYM)
(GENSYM "ABC")
```

The function returns a new, uninterned symbol, whose print name begins with PREFIX and ends with a number. For example:

```
(GENSYM "ABC") ==> #:ABC26
```

The number is incremented with each call to GENSYM.

```
(GENSYM "ABC") ==> #:ABC27
(GENSYM "ABC") ==> #:ABC28
```

The default value of PREFIX is reset to whatever string is passed as an argument to GENSYM.

```
(GENSYM "USC") ==> #:USC29
(GENSYM)       ==> #:USC30
```

Figure 1.1: Descriptions with, and without, examples.

---

A number of studies have shown the *need* for examples: a fifteen year survey on documentation carried out on behalf of Xerox, Control Data Corporation and Scientific Data Systems found that the lack of adequate numbers of examples was mentioned by users as one of the three most important user complaints (Maynard, 1982).<sup>4</sup> Almost identical results were reported on military documentation by Beard and Calamars (1983). In yet another study, LeFevre and Dixon (1986) found that in 76% of the cases, users looking at documentation consistently skipped over the explanation initially, going directly to the accompanying examples, returning to the explanations only if the examples could not be understood. These studies show that users appreciate examples and the quality of the documentation or explanation is often judged to be adversely affected by their absence.

---

<sup>4</sup>The other two were: (i) that manuals were software oriented rather than function oriented, and (ii) that they did not have enough reference aids.

## 1.1.2 Documentation: The Effectiveness of Examples

Empirical studies of effectiveness of examples for comprehension have demonstrated significant differences between explanations with and without examples: a study by Reder, Charney and Morgan (1986) found that the most effective manuals for instructing students on the use of a personal computer were those which contained examples; in one case, when the examples were replaced by 'equivalent' textual descriptions (in an IBM PC manual), user comprehension fell to 48% of the previous case when the manual used examples in communication. The speed of learning was seen to increase significantly when examples were included, e.g., (Charney *et al.*, 1988; Reder *et al.*, 1986; Doheny-Farina, 1988). Books on writing or generating good documentation all stress the need for effective, well structured examples, e.g., (Bell and Evans, 1989; Chinell, 1990; Pakin and Associates, Inc., 1984; Simpson and Casey, 1988; Stuart, 1984; Hastings and King, 1986; Horton, 1991).

The use of examples in the comprehension of complex concepts in programming and algebra was studied by a number of researchers, e.g., (Pirolli, 1991; Pirolli and Anderson, 1985; Woolf, 1991; Woolf and McDonald, 1984a; Zhu and Simon, 1987). These studies reflect the importance of examples as an aid to comprehension in educational and instructional contexts. These studies found a need for effective examples in documentation. Most authors writing documentation for tutorial texts in fact recognize this need for examples. Similarly, a system designed to generate documentation on demand from the underlying representation should incorporate examples within the descriptions.

## 1.2 Examples and the Textual Description

Examples are an integral part of any instructional or explanatory process. They help clarify ambiguous definitions and illustrate abstract descriptions. People often use examples to illustrate their point; most text-books include examples in explanations or descriptions of complex concepts. In particular, as we saw previously, examples are *essential* in certain text types, such as instruction manuals and user documentation. Thus, for an explanatory system to be effective, it must be capable of presenting examples to make its point.

Examples alone, however, are not enough. A number of studies have shown that subjects cannot generalize well from examples alone. They have difficulties solving problems that are minor variants of problems they have seen as examples alone, e.g., (Reed *et al.*, 1985; Reed *et al.*, 1974; Gick and Holyoak, 1980; Sweller and Cooper, 1985).<sup>5</sup> Examples cannot be effective without explanatory text, nor can an explanation be effective without accompanying examples.

Matters are not as simple as just presenting both the explanation and the examples. Sweller and his colleagues showed that examples that were not well integrated with the text could make matters worse for the user (Chandler and Sweller, 1991; Sweller and Cooper, 1985; Ward and Sweller, 1990). In the domain of geometry, for instance, they showed how the placement (next to the text, same page, separate page, etc.) of the diagrams that the proof dealt with could substantially affect user comprehension, by distracting the user from the salient points in the description, and cause a deterioration in learning. It is also important that the textual descriptions and the examples complement each other: Chi and her colleagues (1989) showed that naive users understood examples very differently from advanced users. Explanations accompanying examples that did not meet user requirements were not likely to help in understanding the examples, and might even have a negative effect in comprehension. It is therefore important to ensure that both the text and the examples are presented as part of a well integrated,

---

<sup>5</sup>Some of these negative results can be attributed to the nature of the examples presented to the users -- as shown by Pirolli (1991): *structural* examples -- examples that showed the form of a function -- were far more useful to naive students being taught recursion than the *process oriented* examples that explained how recursion actually worked; consequently tests in which process oriented examples were presented to introductory users resulted in disappointing results on the effectiveness of examples.

---

An assignment is a construct that tells T<sub>E</sub>X to assign a value to a register, to an internal parameter, to an entry in an internal table, or to a control sequence. Some examples of assignments are:

```
\tolerance = 2000
\advance\count12 by 17
\lineskip4pt plus 2pt
\everycr = {\hskip 3pt relax}
\catcode\'@ = 11
\let\graf = \par
\font\myfont cmbx12
```

From (Abrahams *et al.*, 1990), page 49.

Figure 1.2: Example of textual elision due to examples.

---

coherent description that complement each other by taking their interactions, mutual constraints, and the context into account.

Examples depend upon the accompanying text (Feldman, 1972), and in turn, affect the actual textual explanation produced (Klausmeier and Feldman, 1975): the information content of the examples and the terms used in conveying that information are dependent on the accompanying description, while the presence of the examples helps the explanation to refer to features and properties of the example to better convey its point. In some cases, the introduction of examples can result in additional textual descriptions being presented; in other cases, some portion of the original textual explanation may be elided. Consider the description in Figure 1.2. It describes the assignment operation in T<sub>E</sub>X. The examples illustrate a number of things which are not mentioned explicitly in the description because they are illustrated in the examples. Some of these are: (i) the variable being assigned a value appears on the left and the value on the right; (ii) objects being assigned values can be either global variables, local variables, fonts, or control characters; (iii) values being assigned can be either numbers, variables or expressions to be evaluated; (iv) the variable and the value can be separated by "=" or space or nothing at all (the "=" and space are optional). It is thus clear that the process of incorporating examples is inextricably linked to the process that generates the text.

There is a large body of relevant experimental work on the interaction between examples and their context in education. Researchers have studied the cognitive effects of varying different parameters in the presentation of educational materials in the classroom, e.g., (Bruner, 1966; Carnine and Becker, 1982; Chi *et al.*, 1989).<sup>6</sup> Much of this work dealt with the construction of conceptual models, studies of attention spans, and the development of effective teaching techniques. None of the studies reported had a computational perspective. However, there are important insights to be drawn from this work. The results on the cognitive effects of presenting contrasting positive and negative examples, the need to present simple examples before complex ones, and the need to vary the examples based on the user corroborate our analysis of the corpus used. The fact that these studies were conducted in different domains (biology, algebra, geometry, etc.) implies that such results are not applicable just to a narrow application (such as programming languages), but are widely applicable.

---

<sup>6</sup>Additional references are (Clark, 1971; Engelmann and Carnine, 1982; Feldman, 1972; Feldman and Klausmeier, 1974; Frederiksen, 1984; Gillingham, 1988; Houtz *et al.*, 1973; Klausmeier, 1976; Klausmeier and Feldman, 1975; Klausmeier *et al.*, 1974; MacLachlan, 1986; Merrill and Tennyson, 1978; Moore, 1986; Michener, 1978; Rissland, 1978; Tennyson and Park, 1980; Tennyson *et al.*, 1975; Tennyson and Tennyson, 1975; Tennyson *et al.*, 1972).

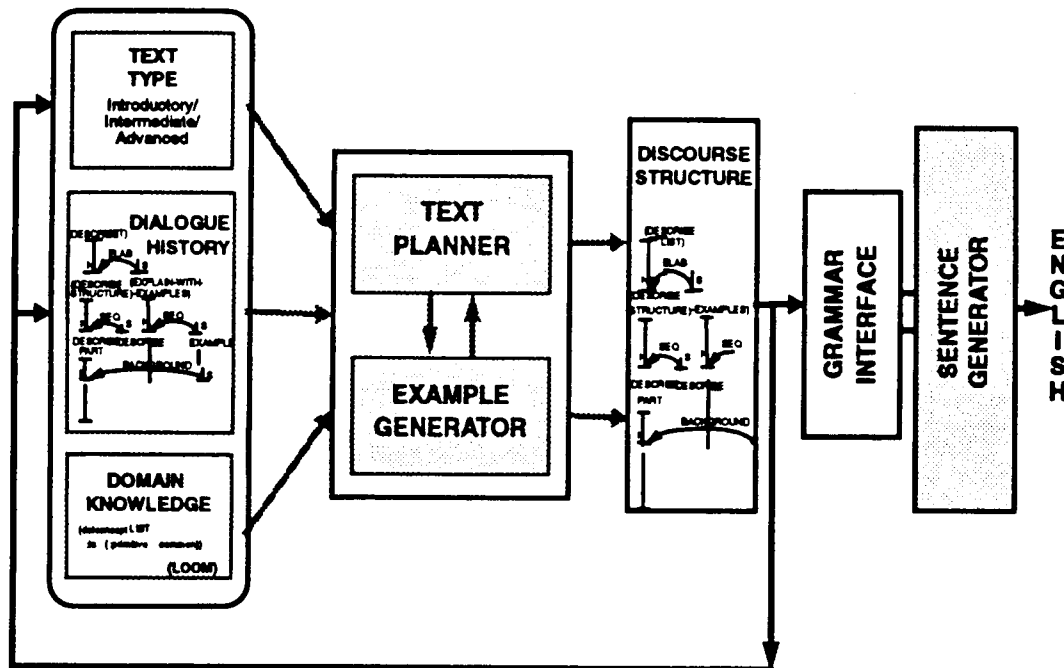


Figure 1.3: A block diagram of the overall system.

### 1.3 The System and the Application Domain

We have seen above that good documentation is an important aspect in user acceptance of a system, that examples are important for good documentation, and that examples cannot just be added to the text because they strongly interact with the accompanying description. To test the validity of the hypotheses that resulted from our corpus analysis, we chose to implement a system in the domain of automatic generation of system documentation. There are many reasons for this choice: (i) automatic documentation is an important application in which to investigate these issues because examples are crucial in documentation and documentation is a critical factor in user acceptance of a system; (ii) there is a large body of work on how documentation should be written; (iii) a lot of actual material available for our corpus analysis, including numerous examples of different text types (such as introductory and advanced); and (iv) we could implement our results within a large software system.

A block diagram of the system is shown in Figure 1.3. The system consists of a text planner, an example generator, a grammar interface and a sentence generator. The system takes a high level communicative goal, such as 'describe the concept list'<sup>7</sup> and can generate a description of the type shown in Figure 1.4. The system can also be used to generate advanced, reference manual type descriptions of concepts.<sup>8</sup> Reference texts differ from introductory texts in many ways, and these can be handled by the system as well. The system is part of the larger framework in the Explainable Expert Systems Project (EES) (Neches *et al.*, 1985; Swartout *et al.*, 1992; Swartout and Smoliar, 1987), and builds upon previous work in text planning and explanation.

<sup>7</sup>The formal notation for specifying such goals will be described in Chapter 5, where the system is discussed in greater detail.

<sup>8</sup>Introductory and reference texts are the two text types that the system can currently generate texts for. Intermediate texts, which are discussed for the sake of completeness cannot be handled by the system as yet, because the underlying semantics of the constructs in our domain are not yet represented.

---

A list always begins with a left parenthesis. Then come zero or more pieces of data (called the elements of a list) and a right parenthesis. Some examples of lists are:

(MONKEYS)  
(RED PIZZA CARS PLANES)  
(2 3 5 11 19)  
(5 BLUE 9 FISHES)

A list may contain other lists as elements. Given the three lists:

(BLUE ORANGE) (AARDVARKS ELEPHANTS) (FISHES APPLES)

we can make a list by combining them all with a parentheses.

((BLUE ORANGE)(AARDVARKS ELEPHANTS)(FISHES APPLES))

Figure 1.4: A description of the concept list using examples.

---

## 1.4 Contributions of the thesis

This thesis is an attempt to synthesize related work on descriptions and examples in psychology, education, the computational generation of examples and natural language generation, together with the results of our corpus analysis. The contributions of this thesis are:

- an analysis of both the interactions between text and examples, and their mutual constraints by corpus analysis (for instance the fact that examples can cause both deletion and addition of the text around them);
- the identification and analysis of the different features in the examples that are important in the context of generation (the position of the examples, the type and amount of information in the examples, the necessity for prompts in some cases, etc.);
- an improved categorization of example types that takes into account the context of the examples and is computationally implementable;
- the identification of the differences between descriptions (in the BNF-documentation domain) generated for introductory texts and advanced texts;

These claims have been validated by implementation of a text planning system which generates explanations using the heuristics identified in this thesis. The resulting texts not only closely matched with the 'typical' texts in our corpus, but were in some cases better based on an empirical evaluation of the cognitive effectiveness of our descriptions.

## 1.5 Organization of the thesis

The thesis is organized as follows:

Chapters 2--4 present the background material, and a discussion of the major issues in the presentation of examples. Chapter 2 presents the background and related work in the use of examples: as aids in intelligent tutoring systems (ITS), work in machine learning on the characteristics of good examples, and on the development of some instructional models that emphasize the use of examples. Chapter 3 discusses the issues that were identified by us as being important in the integration from

our corpus analysis. Chapter 4 presents a categorization of example types, necessary in building a computational model.

Chapter 5 presents an overview of an implemented system used in generating descriptions that integrate text and examples. It describes the text planning framework, and the representation of text planning knowledge in the constraints of the plan operators. A brief description of the grammar representation is given, followed by detailed descriptions of how the different examples are generated. This is essential as background for the chapters that follow.

Chapters 6 and 7 illustrate how the system works by describing the generation of different scenarios. These scenarios illustrate certain aspects of the interaction between text and examples, such as textual elision and addition, the effect of negative examples, etc.

Chapter 8 discusses the effect of the text type on the descriptions. The text type significantly affects the explanations produced, both in terms of the content of the text and examples, as well as in the resulting positions of the examples. A description of a list is generated for two text types (introductory and advanced) to highlight some of these differences.

Chapter 9 presents results from empirical studies on the effectiveness of our heuristics. Portions of the descriptions and the questions asked of the subjects are presented here. In all cases, the issues identified in this thesis were found to make noticeable differences in the comprehensibility of the descriptions.

Finally, Chapter 10 concludes with a look at the research contributions and possible directions for future work.

## Chapter 2

### Related Work

This chapter reviews some of the previous research that deals with examples in learning. This work has been primarily conducted in three fields: (i) intelligent tutoring systems (ITS), (ii) cognitive science and educational psychology, and (iii) machine learning (ML). Work in ITS has been concerned with the generation of examples suitable for education. Work in cognitive science has been focused on factors that affect understanding and human learning from examples. The work in machine learning reviewed here has concentrated on the characterization of good examples from the point of view of efficient learning by a system. The insights gained from this work on ML are relevant to this thesis because we believe that the characteristics that make examples good for a system to learn from can lead to useful heuristics for human learning.

### 2.1 Intelligent Tutoring Systems

Tutoring systems in different domains such as algebra, e.g., (Baxter, 1989), arithmetic, e.g., (Burton and Brown, 1982), legal reasoning, e.g., (Rissland, 1983; Rissland *et al.*, 1984; Rissland and Ashley, 1986), LISP programming, e.g., (Reiser *et al.*, 1985), etc. made use of examples in their interaction. However, these systems concentrated on *finding* appropriate examples for specific aspects of the situation. They did not consider issues involved in presenting the examples *as part of an overall description*. As a result, issues in which the context of the examples plays an important role, such as the accompanying explanation, the number of examples, their order of presentation, etc. were not considered. (These systems were able to do so because of two reasons: (i) the descriptions that were generated by these systems were done so using templates which had specific slots for examples, and in some cases, such a template based generation scheme can result in acceptable explanations, e.g., (Reiser *et al.*, 1985); (ii) they did not address the explanation issue at all, but concentrated on the examples in isolation, e.g., (Baxter, 1989; Rissland, 1983; Rissland *et al.*, 1984; Rissland and Ashley, 1986). An exception was the WEST system (Burton and Brown, 1982), which specifically attempted to generate descriptions within a natural language interface. This system is described further in Section 2.1.3.)

Most of the work on finding appropriate examples has concentrated on retrieving and modifying previously stored examples. For example, Rissland (1981) studied the issue of when to *construct* vs. *retrieve* examples. Later work by her group led to the identification of twelve important dimensions along which legal examples could be indexed: this was implemented in the HYPO system (Ashley, 1991; Rissland and Ashley, 1986; Rissland, 1983), which used these twelve dimensions (or feature axes) to try to modify a retrieved example. A more general approach was adopted by Suthers *et al.* in their example generator (Suthers and Rissland, 1988; Woolf *et al.*, 1988) in which definitions of objects in the domain were annotated with procedural specifications for modifying different features so as to satisfy various constraints.

Our system builds upon this work to find appropriate examples for use in the presentation. In the following sub-sections, we discuss some of these approaches in greater detail and show how they may be used (with appropriate extensions) as a part of an integrated system to generate object descriptions.

### 2.1.1 The Constrained Example Generator -- CEG

Rissland's Constrained Example Generator (CEG) (Rissland, 1981; Rissland and Soloway, 1980; Rissland, 1980) was one of the first systems to attempt example generation for tutorial purposes. It was designed for use in mathematical domains and could generate examples for requests such as "*a list with three elements*," or "*a list, such that the first element is also a list*." The system retrieved close matches from a database of examples, and modified them to fit the current goal. It had specialized modules to handle recursive requests such as the latter one above, and could incorporate previously presented examples into the current one.

Rissland's work was also concerned with cognitive issues in the use of examples: whether people were more likely to retrieve or construct examples in different situations. In several studies of human protocols, she was unable to find specific situations in which people would do either one or the other; both were equally likely (Rissland, 1981). The CEG system was built to test different example generation algorithms: construction and retrieve-and-modify strategies. The example modification knowledge was stored in specialized routines; it did not attempt to reason about which dimensions to try and modify first (or to avoid trying to modify), or how the features might relate to, and constrain, each other. Since this information was hard coded in the form of LISP routines, it was difficult to modify the system to study alternative methods and modification strategies.

The system was intended to be a component in a tutoring system (though it was never included in one) and took into consideration factors such as familiarity in the choice of objects in the construction of its examples (for instance, when constructing a list, the system would try and choose small numbers like 2 or 3, while trying not to repeat them). However, it did not reason about factors such as amount of information to be conveyed per example, possible integration within an explanatory discourse, etc.

CEG is relevant to this thesis because it generated examples specifically intended for *tutoring*. Consequently, it used heuristics about the sort of elements to include in the examples. For instance, it used numbers such as 2 and 3, rather than 3.1415927 in the generation. CEG was built so that it would present different examples if asked to present more than one. Our example generator uses some of these insights from CEG to generate examples in our framework.

### 2.1.2 Reasoning with Hypothetical Examples -- HYPO

A follow-up to CEG was the HYPO system (Rissland *et al.*, 1984; Rissland and Ashley, 1986). This system investigated the *retrieve-and-modify* paradigm, and was implemented in the domain of trade-rights litigation. It had a knowledge base of domain terms and a specialized knowledge base that contained only examples, the *Example Knowledge-Base* (EKB).

Given a set of constraints, HYPO could retrieve close examples from the EKB and modify them to fit the situation. It could find positive examples to bolster its case, as well as weaken its opponent's case with negative examples. The system used twelve pre-defined features as indices to retrieve the relevant cases. These twelve features were identified as being important from an analysis of real cases. These features were used as an index into the EKB in HYPO; it possessed knowledge on how to modify these twelve parameters to make an example meet specific requirements.

The system was designed to investigate the retrieval and modification of examples in a complex, real-world domain. In actual court cases, the established precedent is considered to be of paramount

importance; the system modeled that particular aspect very well. However, it did not address issues other than those covered by the twelve features, and therefore did not address any non-legal issues, such as language, comprehensibility, complexity, etc. HYPO could reason about the pre-defined dimensions, but the knowledge about how the dimensions related to one another was encoded in the procedural knowledge, and modification of the system (of any feature's relevance, for instance) was very difficult.

Recent work on HYPO has focused on the generation of examples based on a general specification of the goal (Aleven and Ashley, 1992; Ashley and Aleven, 1992). The examples (which are configurations of legal cases) are constructed by putting together individual cases that when put together, help make an argumentative point. The system uses a KL-ONE representation to find suitable examples. HYPO illustrates how examples can be retrieved (and modified) even in complex, real world cases.

### 2.1.3 Presenting Context Dependent Examples -- WEST

One of the most sophisticated game playing programs built to teach basic mathematical concepts such as addition, subtraction and multiplication was the WEST<sup>1</sup> system (Burton and Brown, 1982). It generated examples to help illustrate better moves in any given situation. It is notable because it took into account the context while presenting an example. WEST had specialized modules to help it generate suitable natural language phrases in order to interact with the student. The central feature of WEST was its ability to present appropriate examples to help support its criticism if the student made sub-optimal moves. These examples were supposed to illustrate the alternative sequence of moves that the student should have explored but did not. If the student made moves which the system considered sub-optimal (based on the system's evaluation function), WEST would try and correct the student's high level strategic knowledge by generating a sequence of example moves to illustrate the better strategy.

The system used rules about optimal strategies for the current board position to generate examples for presentation. In general, conjecturing alternative strategies is extremely difficult unless one has a sufficiently closed world, in which case the set of all possible strategies can be characterized. This characterization can be either a generative mechanism, such as a grammar, or an explicit enumeration of all possible alternatives. WEST's world was small enough and closed enough that its designers felt that the latter strategy would work sufficiently well.

WEST is relevant because it is one of the few ITS systems that was extensively field tested. It received *high ratings* from users. This was *credited to the fact that it used natural language* to communicate with the users. WEST's success bolsters our position on the use of natural language interfaces. Our approach to designing the documentation system substantially differs from that of WEST. This is because WEST assumed a single user type, and because of its small domain, it had been possible to enumerate all of its examples *a priori*. This is not possible in domains such as system documentation.

### 2.1.4 Lessons Learnt

The work on ITS illustrates the computational feasibility (CEG, HYPO) and importance (WEST) of generating examples in tutoring. CEG highlighted the issue of using simple elements in tutoring examples. HYPO illustrated the possibility of retrieving and modifying real life, complex examples. WEST demonstrated how the combination of natural language and examples could result in high user acceptance.

---

<sup>1</sup>A tutor/coach for the game "How the West was Won."

The next section describes some of the work in cognitive science and educational psychology which concentrates on effective instructional methods based on the use of examples.

## 2.2 Cognitive Science and Educational Psychology

There has been a tremendous amount of work on examples done in both cognitive science and educational psychology. Examples have always been regarded as important in instruction; Klausmeier (1976) hypothesized that if definitions alone were presented (without accompanying examples), "the child runs the danger of merely memorizing a string of verbal associations, rather than understanding the concept." In this section, we discuss some of the studies relevant to this thesis. (Other studies, that help corroborate our findings, while not discussed here, will be cited appropriately.) These studies serve as the basis for some of the heuristics used in our system. For instance, the Direct Instruction Model described here discusses different ways of presenting instructional material and specifically deals with sequences of examples. Cognitive Load Theory deals with directing the cognitive resources towards activities that are relevant to learning; some of the work on distraction by the wrong placement of examples and text (and figures and text) is directly relevant to our work.

### 2.2.1 The Direct Instruction Model

The *Direct Instruction Model* (DIM) (Bruner, 1966; Engelmann and Carnine, 1982; Moore, 1986) is an instructional design theory that is concerned with the 'creative application of empirically verified instructional principles to improve the effectiveness of instruction across a wide range of cognitive outcomes.' DIM is comprised of four components that specify:

1. the kind of experiences that pre-dispose a student towards learning,
2. the form and structure of knowledge,
3. the most effective sequence in which to present the material, and
4. the nature and pacing of rewards and punishments in the process

DIM is a prescriptive model that does not *a priori* determine educational or training goals, but sets out means to accomplish them, once they have been established. Most importantly, DIM categorizes knowledge types in order to determine the most efficient means of presenting each category to the user. There are three categories into which knowledge can be arranged: (i) facts, (ii) correlations, and (iii) cause-effects. Each of these categories is further sub-divided in (Bruner, 1966) as follows:

- **Facts (Basic Forms):**

- non-comparatives (single dimensioned concepts, such as the color 'green,' the number '5,' etc.)
- comparatives (in a single dimension, such as 'larger,' 'heavier,' etc.)
- nouns/multi-dimensional concepts (such as 'a car,' 'a shoe,' etc.)

- **Correlations (Joining Forms):**

- transformations ( $F(x) \rightarrow y$ )
- feature relationships ("when it rains, the leaves get wet")

- **Cause-Effects (Complex Forms):**

- cognitive problem solving routines
- communications about events (fact systems)

Each of these sub-types is then analysed to see how presentations of that particular form should be made in instructional contexts. DIM contains specifications that must be considered during *initial* instruction through examples. These are directly relevant in this research. For instance, it contains warnings such as: "... a concept cannot be taught through the presentation of only one example. Positive examples alone are not sufficient, negative examples should be presented as well," etc.

The DIM methodology is important because, unlike most other models in instructional design, it describes the generalization learnt by the reader in terms of the features presented in the examples. (Other models do so in terms of the internal processes of the user.) This allows the DIM model to be applied to a computational system where the initial presentation is planned based on the features of the concept to be described, rather than a detailed cognitive model of the user's learning abilities. Within DIM, individual differences in users are seen as irrelevant to the design of the instruction. Learning outcomes are determined not by constructs such as the development stage, but by features of the knowledge (in terms of the specific sets of examples) communicated to the user. Our system makes use of the directives in DIM (such as the presentation of a pair of contrasting examples to illustrate some features, etc.) to plan the presentation.

### 2.2.2 Adaptive Presentation Strategies

Adaptive presentation strategies, in contrast to the Direct Instruction Model, attempt to vary the presentation based on the user's response. Work in this area of research has focused on various aspects of concept acquisition through the use of different instructional strategies in class-room instruction, e.g., (Park and Tennyson, 1980; Tennyson *et al.*, 1972).<sup>2</sup>

Adaptive presentation strategies are based on the hypothesis that concept learning is a two-stage process: conceptual knowledge is formulated first, followed by development of procedural knowledge, e.g., (Tennyson *et al.*, 1981; Tennyson *et al.*, 1983; Anderson, 1987). Adaptive presentation strategies dictate that example presentations should be sensitive to error patterns in these two learning phases: if the learner has just been presented initial information about a concept, the examples should be oriented towards learning the declarative, conceptual form. On the other hand, if the learner has already been presented with the conceptual information, 'interrogative'<sup>3</sup> examples should be presented. Results have shown that this adaptive instructional strategy was superior to the fixed selection strategy in terms of both post-test and retention performance (Park and Tennyson, 1986).

Presentations in which the number and order of examples were varied based on the user response were also seen to be useful in enhancing comprehension (Park and Tennyson, 1980). An experiment to test the discrimination ability found that examples should be presented that cause the learner to understand one discriminant before presenting further examples that deal with other discriminating features of the concept. Thus, if succeeding examples are presented in reference to the classification of the response, rather than in a pre-determined (response insensitive) order, the number of examples could be minimized.

This model underlines the need to present appropriate number of examples in the right order, as well as with the correct level of difficulty. If the learner's comprehension can be taken into account

<sup>2</sup>Other references for adaptive presentation strategies are (Park and Tennyson, 1986; Merrill and Tennyson, 1977; Merrill and Tennyson, 1978; Tennyson and Park, 1980; Tennyson *et al.*, 1975; Tennyson and Tennyson, 1975; Carnine, 1980a; Carnine, 1980b; Carnine and Becker, 1982).

<sup>3</sup>Interrogative examples are examples that highlight discriminant features. Such features can be used to categorize concepts in membership classes, and can be used to answer questions about whether an instance belongs to a particular concept class or not.

during the presentation process, adapting the examples from a declarative form initially (simple positive examples) to an interrogative form (negative, as well as positive examples that highlight discriminating features) as the learner gains familiarity with the concept can help in minimizing the number of examples that need to be presented.

### 2.2.3 Cognitive Load Theory

Cognitive Load Theory (Chandler and Sweller, 1991; Sweller and Cooper, 1985; Ward and Sweller, 1990) suggests that effective instructional material facilitates learning by directing cognitive resources toward activities that are relevant to learning, rather than toward 'preliminaries to learning.' Thus, the presentation of unnecessary information (even information that was useful, but non-essential, such as for instance, a commentary on a figure) had deleterious effects on the learning process. On the other hand, a separation in the presentation of independent sources of information did not detract from comprehensibility. Thus, two unrelated pieces of information could be presented at different places, or different times, with no loss in user comprehension.

On the other hand, separation of related sources of information, such as explanations and diagrams, or text and examples, resulted in reduced comprehension as compared to their integrated presentation. These studies indicate that there is a need to present different sources of information, such as text and examples, appropriately: physically close, mutually referent, if they are related and complementary; explicitly separated, or annotated as being independent, if the examples and text are not mutually referent and are not necessary for understanding each other.

### 2.2.4 Examples and Explanations

In an effort to study the utility of examples in complex subjects such as recursion (in programming languages), Pirolli and Anderson (1985) studied a group of nineteen students learning to program.<sup>4</sup> The success of their attempts was dependent upon how well they understood the working of the examples. The subjects, all novices in programming, were split into two groups; both groups were given explanations with examples that illustrated the concept of recursion. One group was given an explanation (of recursion) in terms of the *structure* of the examples (how it was *written*: the fact that the terminating condition was written before the recursive call, etc), while the other group was given a *process* oriented explanation of recursion (how the example *worked*). The examples in both the explanations were identical, while the textual explanations accompanying the examples differed.

The group which was given the explanation in terms of the structure fared much better than the other group which was given process-oriented explanation (in terms of time taken for understanding). In the case of advanced users, however, (users with knowledge and experience of related concepts), upon presentation of the same examples and descriptions, the group which was given the process-oriented explanations fared better. Given that the examples remained the same, it is clear that the differences in the comprehension and learning time were due to the accompanying explanation.

To investigate the importance of explanations further, Chi *et al.* (1989) analyzed self-generated explanations of students working through complex examples in the domain of mechanics. Since examples typically contain a series of unexplicated actions, self-explanations are important in understanding the significance of the example. The study found that good and poor students used the examples in different ways: good students tended to refine and expand conditions for the actions in the example solutions, and link them back to the principles in the textual explanations; poor students did not

---

<sup>4</sup>Evidence of the popularity of examples can be seen in that 18 of the 19 students immediately attempted to use previously seen examples to write code.

generate sufficient self-explanations and relied very heavily on previously seen examples in attempting to solve further problems. This study shows that in the case of naive students, the explanations that accompany the examples must encourage the linkage between the given example and the general principles.

These studies emphasize the importance of presenting a textual explanation along with the examples to help clarify and disambiguate difficult or important features in the examples.

### **2.2.5 Summary**

Each of the four approaches discussed -- DIM, Adaptive Presentation, Cognitive Load Theory and combining examples and explanations -- has important consequences for the comprehensibility of generated descriptions. The presentation directives in DIM are useful since a computational system can have, at best, a sketchy model of the learner's cognitive state. At the same time, it can have extensive information about the features and attributes of the concept it wishes to present. Adaptive Presentation techniques are important since the system has to generate for different user types with differing backgrounds; the system must also be responsive to the context, as well as the previous interaction. Cognitive Load Theory and the studies on explanations with examples emphasize the need to physically as well as conceptually integrate the related components, while explicitly separating the unrelated ones. As we shall see later, this becomes essential in cases where exceptional (or anomalous) examples are presented by the system.

## **2.3 Machine Learning**

Examples have always been used in machine learning. Systems have been implemented to test various theories, and computational results have been derived. Inductive machine learning from examples and Explanation Based Learning (EBL) represent two of the approaches that have been studied in this area. In this section, we review some work in machine learning pertinent to this thesis. The work reviewed here deals with the characterization of good examples for machine learning. Since there are some similarities between machine learning and cognitive learning (and some of the work in machine learning is inspired by cognitive analyses, such as SIERRA, for instance), the hope is that examples which are good for machine learning have characteristics that are beneficial for learning in people as well.

Particularly relevant is the work in computational learning theory, where it has been shown that factors such as the type of examples presented, the order in which they are presented, whether the target concept contains disjunctions, etc. can significantly influence the resources required for generalizing to a concept, e.g., (Valiant, 1984; Angluin, 1987) and the number of examples that are required to do so, e.g., (Ling, 1991; Rivest and Sloan, 1988). Similar results hold in cognitive studies of learning, where the limited amount of short term memory can determine which presentation sequences are likely to be effective (Anderson *et al.*, 1980; Anderson and Matessa, 1990). However, in this section, we describe some of the earlier work on learning from examples for illustration.

### 2.3.1 Learning from Near-Misses -- ARCH

One of the earliest systems to learn from examples, the ARCH program (Winston, 1975; Winston *et al.*, 1983), learnt generalized structural<sup>5</sup> descriptions from a series of examples. It identified the notion of a 'near-miss' as being an important concept in learning. These 'near-miss' examples were examples that differed from positive examples in only one feature. When a negative example differs from the current understanding in more than one feature, the learner cannot determine which (or both) of these differences is the critical one. This can lead to considerable search and false refinement. The program used these near-misses to reason about *mandatory*-- and *inconsequential*-- relations in this model<sup>6</sup> -- the system learnt to distinguish these based on the classification of the examples it was shown. ARCH was among the first programs to emphasize the quality of examples as a factor in its learning process.

ARCH is relevant to this thesis in several ways: it was the first attempt to characterize good examples in the learning process. The concept of *near-misses* -- which exists in the Direct Instructional Model, and is expressed as the need to present a pair of contrastive examples -- and the stress on the presentation sequence of examples are both important criteria that must be adhered to by the system.

### 2.3.2 Version Spaces

Mitchell's (1982) *version space* approach presents one of the first computational accounts of how negative examples can help constrain the search space of possible generalizations. The approach involves representing and revising the set of all hypotheses that are describable within the framework and are consistent with the observed examples. Two sets are used to represent the hypothesis space: *S*, which represents the *most specific* generalizations and *G*, which represents the *most general* specializations consistent with the examples. *S* and *G* are updated with each example. When the two sets are identical, the system stops since any further examples would not contribute new information. The version space approach requires the ability to order generalizations by specificity by direct examination. The advantage of the version space approach lies in the fact that *G* summarizes the implicit information in the negative examples (by bounding the 'maximum' level of generality) and *S* summarizes the implicit information in the positive instances. This representation of the version space in terms of *G* and *S* allows the algorithm to process examples without explicitly storing the training examples for later consideration.

The results from version-spaces illustrate the *necessity* of negative examples in the learning process, rather than just their desirability: the *G* set is specialized based on the negative examples seen by the system. Similarly, the use of negative examples can help a learner prune his/her mental hypothesis space.

### 2.3.3 Generating Examples -- LEX

LEX (Mitchell *et al.*, 1983) was a system designed to investigate the acquisition of problem solving heuristics in the domain of symbolic integration. LEX learnt heuristics by generating practice problems to solve, attempting to solve them, and then generalizing from the problem solving experience. The rate of learning was thus dependent upon the nature of problems that LEX attempted to solve. LEX used the version space approach to learn new knowledge. The two important points of LEX were: (i) it possessed heuristics to generate example problems, and (ii) it had perfect knowledge of the internal state of the learner.

---

<sup>5</sup>Structural descriptions portray objects as consisting of various components that have different relationships defined between them; attribute descriptions, on the other hand, list only global properties of the object, such as for instance, its height, weight, color, etc.

<sup>6</sup>These are similar to the *critical* and *variable* features defined in educational psychology.

One of the heuristics used by LEX in generating example problems was to generate a problem that would allow the refinement of some existing, partially learned domain heuristic. To do this, it would select a partially learned heuristic, find a previously solved problem that matched it, and then minimally modify the problem until it no longer matched the heuristic completely. Thus, LEX generated *near-misses* based on this heuristic, for its own learning mechanism.

LEX is very relevant to this thesis because it was concerned with the issue of generating good examples for the system to solve. To this end, it generated *near-miss* problems; the difference between LEX and a human teacher is that LEX *knew* the exact state of the learner, and could therefore target its problems to refine partial heuristics.

### 2.3.4 Importance of Example Sequences -- SIERRA

SIERRA (VanLehn, 1987) is a machine learning system that was inspired by class room observations. Thus, characterizations of good examples for SIERRA are based on good examples in classroom situations. Van Lehn found that people tend to regard as significant, the order in which the examples are presented to them. SIERRA, a computational learning system (VanLehn, 1987), was among the first to try and make use of the sequencing assumption: that the examples presented to it had been generated by someone who had taken the sequencing into account. SIERRA used this assumption to bridge gaps in the example sequences presented to it by considering the examples around the gap. The use of this assumption allowed SIERRA to significantly reduce the number of examples required to learn a procedure; previous systems had assumed that each of the training examples presented were independent of one another; they considered each example in isolation, ignoring information such as its position in a sequence, its neighbouring examples, etc., cues that are usually valuable in real teaching situations.

This discussion on SIERRA is relevant because it underlines the fact that the presentation of examples in an appropriate sequence can greatly reduce the number of examples required to learn the concept.

### 2.3.5 Relationships between Machine Learning and Documentation

There is an interesting parallel between machine learning and documentation. The requirements in two approaches in machine learning from examples correspond to two different text types in documentation. One approach to learning from examples is *induction*, which assumes minimal background domain knowledge, e.g., (Holland *et al.*, 1987; Michalski, 1983). The other is *Explanation Based Learning* (EBL), e.g., (Mitchell *et al.*, 1986; DeJong and Mooney, 1986), which requires the presence of a strong domain theory. Induction often assumes no prior knowledge of the concept, and can require a great many number of examples to generalize. EBL on the other hand, with its strong domain theory, can sometimes learn from just a single, complex example. We noticed that introductory texts meant for naive users (with little or no domain knowledge) used a large number of examples to explain a concept, while reference materials targeted towards advanced users (with significant amounts of domain knowledge, as in EBL) had far fewer, and more complex examples.

## 2.4 Discussion

Much of the work on learning from examples in each of the three fields discussed above (cognitive science, intelligent tutoring systems, and machine learning) has significant implications for each other. For instance, the importance of 'near-misses' has been emphasized in both cognitive psychology as well as machine learning; the importance of presenting minimal irrelevant features, and ordering the

presentation sequence have also been studied in both fields. Computational complexity results on learning disjunctions in machine learning parallel some of the results in cognitive studies in children.

Surprisingly few tutoring systems have attempted to make use of examples as one of their teaching strategies. This may be due to the fact that for example presentations to be effective, there are many other issues that must also be addressed before practical systems can be designed to take advantage of this strategy (issues such as the type and amount of information to be presented in each example, the description, their placement, etc.). Also, unless the examples used are appropriate for the context, they can be detrimental, rather than helpful, in user comprehension.

Our system synthesizes the insights from previous work and builds upon them: it uses the results from ITS to find and construct good examples; results from cognitive science and educational psychology to plan effective and comprehensible presentations; and results from machine learning in modifying examples to construct near-misses and use them in presentation sequences.

In the following chapter, we discuss the issues that arise in the generation of integrated descriptions with both text and examples.

## Chapter 3

### Issues in the Integration of Text and Examples

*Examples, like eyeglasses, blur everything that they do not make more clear.*

*-- Anonymous*

Chapter 1 has argued that documentation is far more effective when it contains well integrated examples. Many issues must be addressed before a systematic account can be developed and a system can be implemented to generate such descriptions -- we discuss them in this chapter. These issues were identified based on a corpus analysis, as well as a synthesis of previous studies in cognitive science and educational psychology.

#### 3.1 Corpus Analysis

We studied a large number of descriptions in different manuals, books, help materials, and on-line documentation to identify the interactions between text and examples and help isolate relevant issues in their integration. The corpus consisted of books about LISP (Meehan, 1979; McCarthy *et al.*, 1985; Novak Jr., 1985; Shapiro, 1986; Steele Jr., 1984; Tatar, 1987; Touretzky, 1984; Charniak *et al.*, 1987; Norvig, 1992; Keene, 1989; Wilensky, 1983; Friedman and Fellesisen, 1987; Winston and Horn, 1984; Lucid, 1990), as well as other programming languages: Postscript (McGilton and Campione, 1992; Braswell, 1989), TeX (Knuth, 1990; Knuth, 1979; Abrahams *et al.*, 1990; Borde, 1992), C (Perry, 1992; Vetterling *et al.*, 1990; Harbison and Steele, 1993), and Unix (UNIX Documentation, 1986; Waite *et al.*, 1983; Stevens, 1990). Each of these publications is well regarded as either a good text-book or a definitive reference manual in its area. Some of these books such as (McGilton and Campione, 1992; Borde, 1992; Perry, 1992; Vetterling *et al.*, 1990), explicitly attempt to explain by using examples.

The availability of multiple books and publications on the same language allowed us to examine various descriptions of the same concept. In addition, we had available publications which were intended either for use as reference manuals by advanced users, or as introductory material meant for naive users. This proved invaluable, as the differences between these two genres is quite significant. In this chapter, we discuss some of the issues raised by our corpus analysis. When discussing each of these issues, we attempt to reference related work in cognitive psychology, to show that some of these issues had already been remarked upon, though usually in isolation, rather than as part of a set of criteria that determine the effectiveness of the presentation.

## 3.2 Issues in Integration

It is essential when planning an explanation that involves examples to pick the examples carefully to fit into the accompanying text. A bad example can be worse than no example. However, choosing the correct example is not sufficient either, since care must be taken to present it in a way that it can be understood easily. This implies that the accompanying explanation must also complement the example. As Pakin observes (underlining ours):

*Examples and illustrations support and amplify verbal explanations. They help make concepts specific and show how things look and work ... Simply including examples and illustrations does not, however, improve documentation. To be effective, each illustration must be an essential piece of documentation – well-planned, carefully prepared, properly labeled, and easily understood. The text should refer to the example specifically.*

(Pakin and Associates, Inc., 1984), page 9.

Examples cannot be generated in isolation, but must form an integral part of the description, supporting and complementing the surrounding text. A number of issues arise in generating descriptions and examples in a coordinated, coherent fashion, such that they complement and support each other. These issues are:

1. When should an example be generated?
2. How is each example generated? Is it retrieved from a knowledge base, or is it constructed? What attributes guide the construction/retrieval process?
3. What information should each example contain? How does it relate to the explanatory text? How many examples should be used? Should the information to be communicated be divided across a number of examples, and if so, how?
4. What order should examples be presented in, if more than example is to be presented? Does this order affect the structure of the accompanying text?
5. How should the example be positioned with respect to the explanation? Should the example be *within* the text, *before* it, or *after* it?
6. When should *prompts*<sup>1</sup> be generated and how should they be indicated?
7. What should be contained in the *descriptive component* of the explanation?<sup>2</sup>
8. Are there different types of examples? If so, what, if any, are the consequence of membership in a particular category? Do different types of examples need to be presented differently?
9. Does the *text type* play a role in the description? Does it place constraints on the textual explanation, the examples, or both?
10. How does the *type* of information (concept *vs* relations) being communicated affect the explanation? textual explanation, examples, or both?

We discuss the first six issues in turn in this chapter. Issue #7 will be discussed in the context of the other issues, as well as when the issue of the text type (issue #9) is dealt with in chapter 8. Issue #8 is described in detail in chapter 4. The last issue on the knowledge type is discussed briefly at the end of this chapter.

<sup>1</sup>Prompts are attention focusing devices such as arrows, marks, or additional text associated with examples.

<sup>2</sup>Descriptions occurring in different text-types are often quite different. In this thesis, we are mainly concerned with the differences between introductory texts and advanced texts.

### 3.3 When should an example be generated?

An important question to be addressed before a system can be implemented to effectively use examples in descriptions is the question of when it should attempt to use an example. The presentation of examples can be either system or user initiated.

The system can decide to include an example as part of its description, to illustrate one or more features. This can be due to the fact that the explanation strategy being followed by the system specifies the need for examples. This is the case for certain text types, such as on-line help manuals: (these manuals have a fixed format of descriptions which are invariably followed by examples), and for certain types of concepts, such as abstract concepts. Exactly when an example is generated depends upon both the concept being described and the text type. This will be explained in detail later, in Chapter 6.

The user can initiate example generation by signalling the need for an example in confusion over a complex or abstract definition. Indications of confusion can be responses such as "Huh?" or repeated requests for help on the same topic. Both Woolf and McDonald (1984a) and Moore's PEA system (Moore, 1989) followed a strategy whereby the system would present an example if the user did not indicate an understanding after presentation of a definition.

### 3.4 Retrieval vs. Construction of Examples

Suitable examples need to be found before they can be used in a description. Examples can either be retrieved from a pre-defined example database and modified to suit the given situation, or constructed in response to a specified goal. HYPO (Ashley and Alevan, 1992; Ashley, 1991; Rissland and Ashley, 1986; Rissland *et al.*, 1984) is an example of a system which took the former approach (retrieval). As discussed in chapter 2, it had twelve pre-defined dimensions along which the feature values could be modified to make the example specific to the given situation. So did the generator by Suthers and Rissland (1988). The Constrained Example Generator (CEG) by Rissland (Rissland, 1980; Rissland, 1981) took the other approach, investigating how examples could be constructed by putting together simpler examples.

Cognitively, it is unclear when people use which method. Protocol analyses by Rissland (in the geometry domain) demonstrated that people were equally likely to do either one (Rissland, 1981). Computationally, there are advantages and disadvantages for both approaches: retrieval and modification implies an efficient indexing scheme into a database of example instances and adequate rules to modify the example to fit the given situation. This approach relies on the assumption that a close match will be available, that modification will be relatively inexpensive and that will result in an appropriate example. In some cases, however, this approach may prove to be more expensive than constructing the example from scratch (Rissland, 1981). Construction of an example, on the other hand, assumes the availability of sufficient knowledge to assemble an example by putting together its components in the correct manner; this requires some knowledge of how the different features of an instance interact and contribute to it being a good/bad example. Modification can often be achieved with less background knowledge than construction, since the system need only change certain feature values. There has been considerable work on modification in Case Based Reasoning on adapting cases for particular situations, e.g., (Hammond, 1990; Kambhampati, 1990b; Kambhampati, 1990a; Veloso and Carbonell, 1990; Cook, 1989; Mostow, 1989; Stanfill and Waltz, 1986; Schank and Riesbeck, 1981)

It is likely that a flexible system will need both (retrieval as well as construction) capabilities.

### 3.5 The Number of Examples

Studies have shown that user comprehension is enhanced when the message contains a minimum number of irrelevant features, allowing the user to focus on the important aspects of the message. This also holds if the message is in the form of examples, e.g., (Ward and Sweller, 1990). This maxim is particularly important for example presentation because examples are concrete instances, bristling with detail. It is usually not possible to construct examples without all the associated low level details, as some of these details are required for the example to have its illustrative power. For instance, the definition of a function (in most programming languages) requires the specification of three components: the function name, the parameters of the function, and the body of the function. However, examples of a function will contain not just these three conceptually important components, but will also contain low level syntactic requirements. Examples illustrating this are shown in Figure 3.1.

In the first case, the example illustrates the use of `defun` as a means of defining a new function name. To do so, the example also presents a number of features not mentioned in the definition: the fact that there are a number of parentheses, the function has parameters, a documentation string, and a body that references the parameters, etc. The second example illustrates 'a procedure that does symbolic computation.' As in the previous case, a number of details necessary for the example to work are not mentioned in the description. For instance, the use of the `CADR` function to retrieve the second element of a list as an atom, and then the use of the `LIST` function to create a new list. In the third case, the example (from the PASCAL programming language), facts such as the statement separator is a semi-colon, the program terminator is a period, the use of the keywords 'begin' and 'end,' etc.

Each example of a concept will necessarily include some features or attributes of the concept. These features can be classified into two categories, depending upon their role:

- **critical features:** features that are *required* for the example to be an instance of the concept being illustrated. For instance, the definition of a function in LISP *must* begin with the left parenthesis, followed by the keyword `defun`, followed by the function name and a list (possibly empty) of the parameters. If either of these is missing, the example is not of a function.
- **variable features:** features that can change within an example without causing the example to not be an example of the concept being illustrated. For instance, the name of a function, the name and number of parameters, etc. are variable features. Their presence is critical, but their actual value is not.

It is essential that the user grasp this difference in the nature of the features. Thus, the system must take this factor into account when presenting examples. To minimize confusion, the system must present examples that highlight specific features and their type (critical or variable) clearly. This can be done, for instance, by presenting pairs of examples, which are identical in all respects, except for the feature being illustrated. This implies that the pair of examples which attempts to emphasize a critical feature will be a *positive-negative*<sup>3</sup> example pair; the pair that emphasizes the variable nature of another feature will be either a *positive-positive* or a *negative-negative* pair. Since a concept can have a number of critical and variable features, the clearest possible presentation would have at least one pair of examples for each feature. However, this may not always be either possible (because of restrictions by the text type). This is reflected in the data, where descriptions in advanced, reference manual type texts have very complex examples with a large number of features. Consider, for instance, the examples in Figure 3.2.

The first example, from (Harbison and Steele, 1993), illustrates the fact that in the C programming language: (i) type declarations can define a new type, (ii) specify that a variable is of that type, (iii)

---

<sup>3</sup>A *positive* example is an example of the concept being illustrated. A *negative* example is *not* an example of the concept being illustrated.

---

The special form `defun` stands for "define function." It is used here to define a new function called `last-name`.

```
(defun last-name (name)
  "Select the last name from a name represented as a list"
  (first (last name)))
```

From (Norvig, 1992), page 12.

---

Consider an example of a procedure that does symbolic computation, rather than a numerical one. This procedure exchanges the first and second elements of a two element list:

```
(defun exchange (pair)
  (list (cadr pair) (car pair))) ; reverse elements
```

From (Winston and Horn, 1984), page 42.

---

When a program has more than one statement, each one is executed in the order it appears. For example:

```
program SecondRun (output);
begin
  writeln ('Hello. I love you. ');
  writeln ('How about lunch?')
end.
```

From (Cooper and Clancey, 1982), page 8.

---

Figure 3.1: Examples often contain many other details.

---

any number of variables can be specified to be of that type, etc. The second example from (Steele Jr., 1984) illustrates multiple different aspects of the 'format' statement in LISP: the fact that it can be used to combine symbols into strings, be used to select from different parameters passed to it, some directives may be recursive, etc.

The number of examples is also dependent on the intended user: the number of critical features the user can be expected to recognize and assimilate from each example. For an introductory text, each example should contain as few features as possible, to ensure that the user is able to recognize them, e.g., (Klausmeier, 1976; Feldman, 1972; Clark, 1971). On the other hand, an advanced user is likely to understand examples containing three to four features without significant difficulty.

The number of examples will thus depend on the text type, as well as the total information content to be conveyed. Studies have suggested that there is a maximum number of examples before the user loses attention. Clark (1971) suggested that four examples were optimal to explain a concept to the user in most cases; more than four together resulted in loss of attention. Feldman and Klausmeier found that the number of examples required depended upon (i) the number of attributes, (ii) the

---

An enumerated type in C is a set of integer values represented by identifiers ... [number of lines deleted] ... For example:

```
enum fish { trout, carp, halibut }  
    my_fish, your_fish ;
```

From (Harbison and Steele, 1993)

---

[ A long description of various options that a `format` statement can take appears here, and has not been reproduced.]

```
(format nil "~@? ~D" "<~A ~D>" "Foo" 5 14 7) ==> "<Foo 5> 14"
```

From (Steele Jr., 1984)

---

Figure 3.2: Examples from advanced, reference manual type texts are complex and multi-featured.

---

level of abstraction, and (iii) the student's learning characteristics; no fixed, optimal number was suggested (Feldman, 1972; Klausmeier and Feldman, 1975). Markle and Tiemann (1969), suggested that an "observation of the critical and variable attributes" to determine the number of examples was required.

### 3.6 The Order of Presentation of the Examples

Given that there may be a number of examples to be presented, their presentation sequence is important. Psychological studies show that the order of presentation of the examples plays an important role in comprehension. Feldman (1972) reported that sequencing was most effective when positive and negative examples were paired together. Houtz *et al.* (1973) suggested that sequencing positive examples and *minimally differing* positive and negative examples together was the most effective sequencing strategy; Klausmeier *et al.* (1974), Litchfield *et al.* (1990), Markle and Tiemann (1969) and Tennyson *et al.* (1975) reported essentially the same (latter) conclusions.

Ordering the examples can be done on at least two levels:

1. **feature level:** at the 'macro' level, the order in which different features of the concept are to be illustrated using examples
2. **example level:** at the 'micro' level, the order *within* a set of examples illustrating a feature

Empirical studies show that presenting easily understood examples before presenting more difficult ones has a significant beneficial effect on the listener (Carnine, 1980b). A set of examples illustrating the importance of ordering based on complexity are shown in Figure 3.3. This ordering is also suggested by the *Principle of End-Weight* in linguistics (Giora, 1988; Werth, 1984), where sequencing the presentation of easily understood information before the presentation of inferred or unknown (relatively more difficult) information is recommended. Thus, while describing a concept, the simpler features should be presented before the more complex ones. The determination of the complexity of a particular feature is domain dependent. In our domain of programming languages, an indication of the

---

Mathematical operators in T<sub>E</sub>X can have limits. The lower limit is specified as a subscript, and the upper limit as a superscript. Examples of operators with limits are:

`$$\bigcap_{k=1}^r (a_k \cup b_k)$$`

produces

$$\bigcap_{k=1}^r (a_k \cup b_k)$$

while

`$$\int_0^\pi \sin^2 ax \, dx = \{\pi \over 2\}$$`

produces

$$\int_0^\pi \sin^2 ax \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

and

`$$a(\lambda) = \{1 \over 2\pi\} \int\limits_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(x) e^{-i\lambda x} \, dx$$`

produces

$$a(\lambda) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(x) e^{-i\lambda x} \, dx$$

From (Abrahams *et al.*, 1990)

---

Figure 3.3: It is important to order examples based on their complexity.

---

complexity of a particular symbol in the grammar can be obtained by estimating the total number of unique examples that could be generated to illustrate that symbol. In a sense, the greater the number of examples possible, the greater its complexity.<sup>4</sup> This will be explained in more detail in Section 5.3.5.

Within a set illustrating a particular feature, the importance of sequencing becomes even more evident because of the implicit information that the sequence can be used to convey. The order of presentation is an important means of focusing the reader's attention. Sequencing can be used to highlight the critical features by presenting pairs of positive and negative examples, and emphasize the variable features by presenting different positive examples. Consider for instance, the examples in Figure 3.4. The first two pairs of examples illustrate the point that atoms and numbers are not lists unless they are enclosed in parentheses. The next three examples show that *symbols* or *numbers* or both can be elements in a list, and finally the last example shows that a list can also be made up of other lists. These points would have been much less obvious if the examples had been presented as in Figure 3.5, because the reader would have to realize the similarity between different examples and contrast them on his/her own.

---

<sup>4</sup>The actual computation of the complexity uses a heuristic that takes into account the number of explicitly defined terminal symbols that a symbol can make use of; this prevents the non-terminal 'integer-number,' for instance, from being assigned a complexity value of infinity.

---

(aardvark)	; example of a list
'aardvark	; not a list
(1)	; example of a list
1	; not a list
(big blue sky)	; a list of atoms
(1 4 6 8 9)	; a list of numbers
(10 white clouds)	; a list of atoms and a number
((big blue sky) (10 white clouds))	; a list of lists

From (Novak Jr., 1985), page 4.

Figure 3.4: Sequences carry implicit information in example sequences.

---

(big blue sky)	; list of atoms
(10 white clouds)	; list of atoms and number
(1)	; a list
(aardvark)	; another list
1	; not a list
'aardvark	; not a list
(1 4 6 8 9)	; list of numbers
((big blue sky) (10 white clouds))	; list of lists

Figure 3.5: Bad sequencing can cause loss of information content.

---

Thus, a *critical* feature can best be illustrated through a *pair* of examples, one positive (possessing the feature) and another negative (similar to the positive one, but *without* the critical feature). *Variable* features are best illustrated through a collection of positive examples similar to each other but varying widely in their variable features. To minimize information loss through bad sequencing (and to prevent the user from the errors of either over-generalization or under-generalization), the system should use the following two principles in structuring example presentations:

1. *Principle of Maximum Positive Variation*: there should be maximum possible variation between positive examples about the same feature -- this prevents the hearer from under-generalizing the concept based on the examples presented.
2. *Principle of Minimum Negative Difference*: there should be minimal difference between positive and negative examples about the same feature -- this helps the hearer rule out the maximum possible number of non-critical features. Features that change between a positive and negative example are then easier to identify as critical features. If the two examples are minimally different, there will be fewer features to consider as possible critical candidates.

Since the examples are an integrated part of the accompanying description an additional constraint in the order of example presentation is often the order in which the various features are mentioned in the accompanying description, or vice versa.

Finally, possible example sequence orderings can also depend upon factors such as the type of concept being communicated: whether it is a disjunctive or a conjunctive concept, and whether it is a relation

or a process. In an interesting extension to the concept of sequencing, Tennyson and Tennyson (1975) found that an animated presentation where the positive example changed to a negative one, was more effective than the presentation of examples in a static sequence, because it drew attention to the differences between the two examples.

The significance of the order of presentation is particularly evident from a curious anomalous result on the theoretical limits of languages that can be learnt from examples. Gold (1965, 1967) showed that certain concepts that could not be learnt when both positive and negative examples are presented, could however be learnt solely from positive examples *when the presentation sequence was carefully constructed*. This is the class of recursively enumerable languages. Consider for example the class of Fibonacci numbers. Given a sequence: 5, 1, 21, 8, 2, 3, 13, the reader is unlikely to be able to recognize the concept. However, should the sequence be presented as: 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, there is a much better chance that the hearer will recognize the *sequence* and be able to generalize to the set of Fibonacci numbers. The hearer actually recognizes the generating function or the algorithm to generate the examples rather than the concept description itself. This illustrates the importance of sequencing examples carefully.

### 3.7 Positioning of the Example and the Description

Once an appropriate example has been generated, it needs to be presented with the accompanying explanation. Should the example be presented *before*, *within* or *after* the textual explanation? An example can either play a 'supporting' role where it illustrates the preceding text, or it can be the focus/subject of the text. Depending on the role, the example either occurs *after* the definition of the concept, or *before* the description of concept based on the example. If the text is introductory, the examples are used to illustrate each attribute of the concept, immediately following the presentation of the attribute in the definition. This results in descriptions where each attribute specification is followed by examples, resulting in a description with examples interspersed *within* it.

When examples are used to elaborate on points that are not explicitly mentioned in the textual description they are often inter-woven with the textual description of the concept. They could have been replaced by text elaborating on these points. This was illustrated in the description of the T<sub>E</sub>X assignment operation, as shown in Figure 1.2, repeated here for clarity, in Figure 3.6. In this case, the examples could be replaced by a statement that conveys all the features being illustrated through examples, as shown in the lower half of the figure.

In another example, consider the description of a list given in Figure 3.7.<sup>5</sup> The examples of list (in group II) of Figure 3.7 communicate information that could have been expressed textually by the following sentence: "*The elements of the list can be either symbols, numbers, or a combination of these two.*" In this case, the examples *replaced* the sentence above; however, the system may choose to elaborate using *both* examples, as well as text. This is illustrated by groups III and IV in the figure, in which the information about lists being made up of sub-lists is expressed both textually (in III) and then by means of an example (in IV). The choice between text and examples depends upon both the text type and the concept being illustrated. In the case of an introductory text, examples are presented if the definition has already been presented. In the case of anomalous or exceptional features, *both* the text and the examples are presented. This is illustrated in the list case, where sub-lists need to be presented. This is a recursive example, and the system presents it using both text and examples. This illustrates the point that examples cannot just be inserted in a dogmatic fashion at the end of a description.

---

<sup>5</sup>The text and examples have been delineated by us for clarity: the text is framed by a clear box, while the examples appear in shaded boxes.

---

An assignment is a construct that tells T<sub>E</sub>X to assign a value to a register, to an internal parameter, to an entry in an internal table, or to a control sequence. Some examples of assignments are:

```

\tolerance = 2000
\advance\count12 by 17
\lineskip4pt plus 2pt
\everycr = {\hskip 3pt relax}
\catcode\@ = 11
\let\graf = \par
\font\myfont cmbx12

```

From (Abrahams *et al.*, 1990), page 49.

---

An assignment is a construct that tells T<sub>E</sub>X to assign a value to a register, to an internal parameter, to an entry in an internal table, or to a control sequence. *The variable being assigned a value is specified first on the left, followed by the value. The variable and the value can be optionally separated by the '=' character, or a space. The value can be either a number, a dimension with units, a variable name, an expression, a control character or a font name.*

Figure 3.6: Example of textual elision due to examples.

---

- |     |  |                        |
|-----|--|------------------------|
| I   | A list always begins with a left parenthesis. Then come zero or more pieces of data (called the elements of the list), and a right parenthesis. Some examples of lists are:  |                        |
| II  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> (AARDVARK)<br/> (RED YELLOW GREEN BLUE)<br/> (2 3 5 11 19)<br/> (3 FRENCH FRIES) </div>   |                        |
| III | A List may contain other lists as elements.  | Given the three lists: |
| IV  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> (BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH)<br/> we can make a list by combining them all with a parenthesis:<br/> ((BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH)) </div> |                        |

From (Touretzky, 1984), page 35.

Figure 3.7: A description of list using examples.

---

---

Numbers and symbols cannot be used as inputs to CAR because numbers and symbols, unlike lists, are not built of CONS cells. Taking the CAR of FROB, for example, causes an ERROR.

```
(CAR 'FROB) ==> Error! Not a list.
```

The function CDR returns the input list after removing its first element. Thus for example:

```
(CDR '(FOO BAR BAZ)) ==> (BAR BAZ)
(CDR '(A B C D))      ==> (B C D)
```

The CDR of a single-element list is the empty list, NIL.

```
(CDR (FROB)) ==> NIL
```

CDR will not work on inputs that are not lists:

```
(CDR 'FROB) ==> Error! Not a list.
```

CAR and CDR work on nested lists just as easily as on flat ones. For example:

```
(CAR '((BLUE CUBE) (RED PYRAMID))) ==> (BLUE CUBE)
(CDR '((BLUE CUBE) (RED PYRAMID))) ==> (RED PYRAMID)
```

Two more pairs are:

```
(CAR '((A B) (C D) (E F))) ==> (A B)
(CDR '((A B) (C D) (E F))) ==> ((C D) (E F))
```

From (Winston and Horn, 1984), page 24.

---

Figure 3.8: A description with a large number of examples of the functions CAR and CDR.

---

The function CDR returns the input list after removing its first element. The CDR of a single-element list is the empty list, NIL. CDR will not work on inputs that are not lists. CAR and CDR work on nested lists just as easily as on flat ones. For example:

```
(CDR '(FOO BAR BAZ)) ==> (BAR BAZ)
(CDR (FROB)) ==> NIL
(CDR 'FROB) ==> Error! Not a list.
(CAR '((A B) (C D) (E F))) ==> (A B)
(CDR '((A B) (C D) (E F))) ==> ((C D) (E F))
```

---

Figure 3.9: Alternative description for the functions CAR and CDR.

---

The importance of the placement of examples is even greater when there are a large number of examples. Consider for instance, the description given in Figure 3.8. The examples are provided at appropriate points *in* the description, rather than being all placed at the end of the description. While the equivalent description in Figure 3.9 is possible, most introductory texts resemble the description in Figure 3.8.

---

The `idleArray` contains the information used by postscript for idle time font scan conversion. The array can be broken down into groups containing different pieces of information. For example:

<code>/Times-Bold</code>	<code>% font name</code>
<code>14</code>	<code>% x scale</code>
<code>14</code>	<code>% y scale</code>
<code>0</code>	<code>% rotation</code>
	<code>% conversion characters</code>
<code>(abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz)</code>	<code>% string length = 26</code>

From (Braswell, 1989), page 8-5.

---

A function to convert temperatures from Fahrenheit to Celsius could be written as:

```
(DEFUN F-TO-C (TEMP)
  (SETQ TEMP (- TEMP 32))    ; subtract
  (/ TEMP 1.8))              ; divide
```

From (Winston and Horn, 1984), page 43.

---

Examples of control strings are:

<code>"-S"</code>	<code>; An -S directive with no parameters or modifiers</code>
<code>"-3,-4:0s"</code>	<code>; An -S directive with two parameters, 3 and -4,</code>
	<code>; and both the colon and at-sign flags</code>
<code>"",+4S"</code>	<code>; First prefix parameter is omitted and takes</code>
	<code>; on its default value; the second parameter is 4</code>

From (Steele Jr., 1984), page 386.

---

Figure 3.10: Prompts are often used in examples.

---

### 3.8 Prompt Generation for the Examples

Examples can communicate a lot of information, some of which is communicated through their ordering. However, this information can sometimes be lost on the reader, especially if he/she is unable to discern the critical difference between juxtaposed examples. To prevent this, one can attempt to draw the reader's attention to the salient point through the use of *prompts*. Prompts are symbols or additional information presented along with the examples to help focus the reader's attention on the critical attributes. Consider for instance the examples in Figure 3.10. The notes in comments on the right represent prompts, focusing attention on a particular feature of the example. Prompts are often used to replace long, detailed explanations about the examples.

Carnine (1980) demonstrated that drawing attention to the changing attributes can significantly help the user focus on critical features of the examples and enhance understandability. There are

---

Consider the code to draw a triangle given below. The second line of the program is the first real line of code -- an instruction to position the pen on the page. **72 144 moveto** is an instruction to move to position (72, 144) on the page.

<b>%!PS</b>	% Postscript magic number
<b>72 144 moveto</b>	% set initial point
306 648 lineto	% add line segment
540 144 lineto	% add another line segment
closepath	% finish the shape
stroke	% paint the path
showpage	% display page

From (McGilton and Campione, 1992), page 11.

Figure 3.11: Prompts can be indicated through the use of bold typefaces.

---

many ways in which prompts can be generated. For instance, the critical features could have been indicated by using **bold** or *italic* typefaces. An example of this is illustrated in Figure 3.11. The writer is describing the use of the **moveto** operator, and presents a small code fragment in which it appears. To highlight the statement, the rest of the code is shown in grey (in the actual book), while the statement being considered is shown in bold face. In this work, we only consider the case of textual prompts like the ones shown in Figure 3.10.

### 3.9 Summary

In this chapter, we have identified some of the basic issues that arise in the presentation of descriptions that integrate both textual descriptions and examples. These issues were identified from our corpus of programming language manuals and text books. While some of these may be more relevant to software documentation than to other domains (such as physical devices, for instance), they are, nevertheless important, and need to be considered by a generation system.

One issue that also arises in the integration of text and examples is the choice of lexical items for the text and the examples. Empirical work on lexical choice includes studies by Feldman and Klausmeier (1974) on the effect of different lexical terms in the definitions and the examples. Their study demonstrated that confusion and ambiguity was minimized by a consistent choice of the lexical terms, in both the definition and the example. Another study by Ward and Sweller (1990), showed that instructional and explanatory materials were most effective when they presented the definitions and the examples using the same lexical terms and constructions. It is therefore important to ensure that the lexical items used in both the descriptions and the examples be used consistently. However, the issue of lexical choice is a complicated one, and currently outside the scope of this work. In our system implementation, since both the text and the examples are generated using the same planner, we ensure that the terms used in both the text and the examples are consistent.

In the following chapter, we describe a scheme for categorizing example types, one that differs significantly from all previously proposed categorizations. This categorization enables us to find appropriate examples in different situations, and use previous results from educational psychology on good presentation sequences for examples illustrating concepts belonging to certain categories. The chapters following that will be concerned with the actual system implementation, and present different traces of the system as it generates different scenarios.

## Chapter 4

### A Categorization of Example Types

The previous chapter discussed a number of issues related to the presentation of examples as part of integrated descriptions. Some of the issues raised there used the terms 'positive' and 'negative' examples. Are there any other types of examples? What are they, and how are they characterized? In this chapter, we consider these questions. We categorize examples into different classes, and define them.

#### 4.1 The Need for Categorizing Examples

Since examples play an important role in comprehension, e.g., (Houtz *et al.*, 1973; Pirolli, 1991; Reder *et al.*, 1986), it is important for a system to be able to present examples to the user. A large number of examples can potentially be used to illustrate a given point. However, not all examples are equally effective in all situations; some are better than others in specific contexts, and others tend to illustrate different aspects of the same concept in different ways and achieve different goals. Categorizing examples is useful because identifying a category from which to generate an example can greatly constrain the number of possible examples that can be applicable in the given situation.

Previous studies on the categorization of examples include studies by Polya (1945) and Michener (1978) on the suitability of examples in different situations. However, these categorizations did not explicitly take into account the *context* in which the example was presented. Yet, the context of an example affects its characterization and usefulness. To use examples effectively -- i.e., as an important and a complementary part of the overall description -- the system must reason with the constraints introduced by both the textual explanation, as well as the examples. This is because both the *examples* and the *surrounding description* affect each other.

This chapter discusses the issue of characterizing the *type of examples* that appear in natural language descriptions. This can be of great help to a system in choosing appropriate examples to present. We first describe previous work on categorizing example types, and illustrate how the same example can be categorized in two different categories if the accompanying description is not taken into account. Then, we present a new categorization, that takes the context into consideration. This categorization is based on three orthogonal dimensions: (i) the *information content*, (ii) the *text type*, and (iii) the *knowledge type* of the example.

#### 4.2 Previous Work on Categorizing Examples

Polya (1945) categorized examples into three categories:

1. leading examples
2. suggestive examples
3. counter examples

Leading examples were ones that contained mostly *critical*<sup>1</sup> features and very few *variable*<sup>2</sup> features; they were meant for naive users. Suggestive examples contained more variable features than leading examples and were meant to 'guide the student in the correct direction.' Counter-examples were negative examples that illustrated how instances were *not* indicative of some concept.

In her work, Michener categorized examples into five categories (Michener 1977; 1978):

1. *introductory examples*: perspicuous, simple cases,
2. *model examples*: general, paradigmatic cases,
3. *reference examples*: standard, ubiquitous cases,
4. *counter examples*: limiting, falsifying cases, and
5. *anomalous examples*: exceptional, pathological cases.

These categorizations make significant contributions to our understanding, but are deficient in two respects:

1. because they do not explicitly take into account the context of the presentation, the same example can often be classified into different categories;
2. the definition of the category is not clearly specified; it is therefore difficult to implement in a computational system.

Furthermore, the two categorizations above did not specify relationships (if any) between their different categories, nor did they specify whether these categories were mutually exclusive.

### 4.3 The Need for Categorizing Examples in Context

Our categorization of examples was driven by the need to be able to generate tutorial and explanatory descriptions that integrate text and examples coherently in a computational framework. In such a framework, a system must be able to present suitable examples to illustrate the description or the definition being presented. The suitability of an example is determined *in the context it appears in, rather than in the abstract*: it depends upon the goal of the description, what features are being presented, where in the overall description the example appears, etc.

Furthermore, the suitability of the example is also affected by other examples around it. As we have described in Section 3.6, the presentation order of the examples plays an important role in reader comprehension. Thus, the appropriateness of a single example, presented for the same description, can be different based on other examples that appear with it, and where in the presentation sequence

<sup>1</sup>As discussed in Chapter 3, critical features are features that are *necessary* for an example to be considered a positive example of a concept. Changes to a critical feature cause a positive example to become a negative example.

<sup>2</sup>Variable features are features that can *vary* in a positive example. Changes to variable features creates different positive examples.

it appears. It would therefore seem obvious that an example can be categorized only in conjunction with the context in which it appears.

We now describe the three dimensions along which we characterize an example in context: the relationship of the information in the example to that in the context, the text type in which the example is to be generated, and the knowledge type being communicated by the examples.

### 4.3.1 The First Dimension: The Relationship between the Example and the Description

One of the dimensions that an example can be characterized along is the relationship of the information contained in the example with the information contained in the accompanying descriptive explanation that it illustrates. Along this dimension, an example can fall into three categories:

**Positive Examples:** These examples are instances of the concept being described and satisfy the properties of the concept as described in the accompanying description. These examples must possess all the critical features of the concept they illustrate. Such examples are usually in an *elaborative* role to the information in the description.

**Negative Examples:** Negative examples (or counter-examples) are *not* instances of the concept being described. These are cases that do *not* meet the requirements specified in the accompanying description, and they play a *contrastive* role in the context.

(AARDVARK)	; example of a list
AARDVARK	; not a list

Figure 4.1: Two examples about a list.

Negative examples can be very useful because they help rule out non-critical features of a concept (Houtz *et al.*, 1973). For instance, the examples of a list in the programming language LISP in Figure 4.1 illustrate the need for parentheses in a list. The negative

example conveys the information that the symbol AARDVARK by itself is not sufficient for an instance to be a list. By virtue of the fact that the only difference between a positive and a negative example is the set of parentheses, it draws attention to the fact that the parentheses are important for something to be a list. Thus, *features in common* between positive and negative examples *can be ruled out as sufficient* features, while *differing features* are highlighted as *necessary* features and thus become more important.

**Anomalous Examples:** Anomalous examples represent irregular or exceptional cases. These are either: (i) instances of the concept described, but not covered by the description, or (ii) instances likely to be mis-classified by the reader (because of an incomplete description). Thus, positive instances which appear to be very different from other positive examples, or negative instances which appear to be very similar to positive examples, would be classified as anomalous cases. Anomalous examples must be presented with appropriate introductory text, and presented apart from the other examples (Engelmann and Carnine, 1982).

The classification of an example into either of these categories depends upon the context established by the accompanying descriptive explanation. For instance, an anomalous example in one context could be classified as a normal, positive example in another context. Consider the following description of a list in LISP:

A left parenthesis followed by zero or more S-expressions followed by a right parenthesis is a list. From (Shapiro, 1986)
--

Given the above definition of a list, the following examples would classify as positive, negative and anomalous cases:

<i>Positive Examples</i>	<i>Negative Examples</i>	<i>Anomalous Examples</i>
(A B C D) (1 2 3 4 5 67) (BLUE SKIES GREEN GRASS)	'THIS-IS-AN-ATOM 1234567 'BLUE	NIL

This categorization of examples could change with another definition:

A list is a CONS-cell whose CDR is either the atom NIL or another list. The atom NIL is the identifier that represents the empty list and the boolean concept FALSE.

From (Steele Jr., 1984)

In this case, NIL becomes a positive example of a list. Similarly, a list may be so defined as to include the concept of a dotted-list as well.

It is clear that it is difficult, and sometimes impossible, to classify an example as belonging to a certain category without taking into consideration the surrounding contextual information. It is also difficult to categorize examples as being 'suggestive' or 'model' or 'reference' without having a complete definition of these different categories. Correct classification of the examples is essential, because examples must be presented in accordance with the category they happen to classify in. For instance, anomalous examples need to be presented separately from the regular examples, with a suitable introduction to notify the user of the anomalous nature of such examples.

### 4.3.2 The Second Dimension: The Text Type

The second dimension that examples can be characterized along is dictated by the text type in which the generation is to take place. It has long been observed that naturally occurring texts fall into certain linguistic patterns which characterize the genre of that text. Many of these genres, such as, for instance, scientific papers, financial reports, etc. impose strong constraints on both the type and frequency of occurrence for certain types of linguistic phenomena such as the rhetorical structure, lexical types, grammatical features, etc. (Hovy *et al.*, 1992). Several text typologies have been proposed by linguists, e.g., Biber (1988, 1989) identified eight basic types of texts based on statistically derived grammatical and lexical commonalities; de Beaugrande (1980) proposed a general classification of text types, also arguing that text types determine the types of discourse structure relations used.

The text type is an important constraint on the selection of information to be presented *both* in the description and the example. In our case, we only use three different text types in our categorization: (i) introductory texts, (ii) intermediate texts, and (iii) advanced, or reference manual type texts. Since these text types are based on the intended user,<sup>3</sup> results in user modelling can also be taken into account. Among the many studies on the need for varying both the amount of information and the manner of presentation based on the user are (Paris, 1993; Paris, 1988; Nwana, 1991; London, 1992). The results from these studies, on the differences in the textual descriptions presented to the user should also be taken into account.

As we have already mentioned before, the major short-coming of both the previous example categorizations was due to the fact that they did not take the accompanying context into account.

<sup>3</sup>There is a close correspondance between the text type and the intended user type. Thus, this dimension can also be labelled as the intended user type.

---

A list always begins with a left parenthesis. Then come zero or more pieces of data (called the elements of a list) and a right parenthesis. Some examples of lists are:

(AARDVARK)  
(RED YELLOW GREEN BLUE)  
(2 3 5 11 19)  
(3 FRENCH FRIES)

A list may contain other lists as elements. Given the three lists:

(BLUE SKY)  
(GREEN GRASS)  
(BROWN EARTH)

we can make a list by combining them all with a parentheses.

((BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH))

From (Touretzky, 1984), page 35.

Figure 4.2: Introductory examples are usually single featured.

---

In contrast, we consider *both* the description and the example for categorization. This is essential, because our system needs to generate both the text as well as the example in its explanation.

From our corpus analyses, we have classified examples in the context of their accompanying descriptions into three main classes -- *introductory*, *intermediate* and *advanced*. This classification constrains both the content and the presentation style of the descriptions and the examples:

1. *introductory*: text type meant for users with little or no previous exposure assumed for the concept; goal is to *learn about* the concept,
2. *intermediate*: text type meant for users with moderate previous exposure; goal is to *learn to make use* of the concept,
3. *advanced*: text type meant for users with extensive knowledge; goal is to clarify some point or misconception about the concept.

**Introductory Texts:** Examples in introductory descriptions tend to be simple ones -- where 'simple' refers to the fact that they are usually single-featured (or if they have multiple features, usually no more than two, where the two features are along two different feature dimensions). This has also been reported in other studies, e.g., (Clark, 1971; Michener, 1977; Carnine, 1980b; Litchfield *et al.*, 1990). In our domain of programming languages, the accompanying description is syntactic or surface/appearance oriented. Anomalous examples are usually absent, and if they are presented, they only appear *after* all the other examples. Examples are often introduced as soon as the point they illustrate is mentioned in the text.

Consider for instance the description in Figure 4.2. The descriptions are centered around the syntax or the surface appearance of the list. The examples are simple and illustrate a feature at a time (the *type* of data elements, except in one case where the *type* and the *number*, two different dimensions of

---

A list looks like a sequence of objects, without commas between them, enclosed in parentheses.

:

Appropriately constructed lists can also be used to call functions in LISP. If you type any of the lists in table 2-4 to LISP, you will get an appropriate response.

**Table 2-2:**

(1 2 3 4 5)	; List of numbers
(A B C D)	; List of symbols
(#\A #\B #\C #\D)	; List of characters

**Table 2-3:**

(This is (also) a list)	;third element is also a list
((12 eggs (large)) (1 bread (whole wheat)))	;list of lists of numbers,
(4 pizzas (frozen with anchovies)))	; symbols and lists
("this is a string in a list" -53)	;list of a string and a number
((Beth "555-5834") (Pat "555-8098"))	;list containing two lists

**Table 2-4:**

(SQRT 2)	; the first element is the name of a function
(+ 2 3)	; the first element is the name of a function
(- 6 5 4)	; the first element is the name of a function.

Lists can be considered ways to store data. For example, you might want to store your inventory as a list, or group together names and phone numbers in a list.

From (Tatar, 1987), page 16.

Figure 4.3: Intermediate 'use' oriented examples.

---

variation, are illustrated). Examples do not always have prompts, because the same information is usually realized as sentences in the accompanying description.

**Intermediate Texts:** Descriptions written for the 'intermediate' reader (who is already assumed to have introductory knowledge) tend to be more complex than the ones for introductory users, in that they include more detail on *how* the information may be *used* by the user. The examples are not always presented immediately; if there are a number of related points, these points are stated first, before a group of examples illustrating these points are presented. The examples themselves are usually briefly annotated (with prompts). Intermediate descriptions contain a few introductory examples, which are then followed by examples that illustrate the use of the concept. For example, the description in Figure 4.3 describes how a list can be used to represent shopping lists, store phone numbers and write function calls.

**Reference or Advanced Texts:** Since the purpose of advanced or reference materials is *not* instruction, it is not surprising that both the textual description and the accompanying examples are very different from those in the introductory ones. The documentation and the examples usually occur in a fixed format, with the examples following the definition and the explanation. The examples are not simple, single-featured, but tend to be few and multi-featured. The examples are often almost

---

A list is recursively defined to be either the empty list or a CONS whose CDR component is a list. The CAR components of the CONSes are called the elements of the list. For each element of the list, there is a CONS. The empty list has no elements at all.

A list is annotated by writing the elements of the list in order, separated by blank space (space, tab, or return character) and surrounded by parentheses. For example:

```
(a b c)           ; A list of 3 symbols
(2.0s0 (a 1) #\*) ; A list of 3 things: a floating point
                  ; number, another list, and a character
                  ; object
```

The empty list NIL therefore can be written (), because it is a list with no elements.

From (Steele Jr., 1984), page 26.

Figure 4.4: Reference documentation has fewer, more complex examples.

---

The list function takes any number of inputs and makes a list of them all. For example:

INPUT to list		OUTPUT
foo bar baz	→	(foo bar baz)
foo	→	(foo)
(frob)	→	((frob))

From (Touretzky, 1984), p.51

Figure 4.5: Examples of a relation.

---

independent of the textual description, with little cross-referencing between the two. This almost invariably results in prompts being used to indicate some of the salient characteristics of the examples. Since the descriptions tend to be comprehensive, there are few (if any) anomalous examples. If there are any anomalous examples, they are *always* presented. For example, a description of a list from an advanced, reference manual is shown in Figure 4.4.

### 4.3.3 The Third Dimension: The Knowledge Type

The *knowledge type* can also be used during the generation process to determine the appropriate type and sequence of examples to be generated in an explanation. The *knowledge type* refers to the categorization of information into one of three broad classes: *concepts*, *relations* or *processes*. There can be significant differences in the presentation of examples and the accompanying descriptions based on whether the idea to be explained is a concept, relation or a process. Consider for instance the *concept* 'list' (as described in Figure 4.2) and the *relation* 'list' (functions are relations that hold between the input parameters and the output values of the function), as illustrated in Figure 4.5.

The *concept* list is described as an object, and examples of list are instances of this object; the *function* list, on the other hand, is described in terms of its input and output parameters, and examples

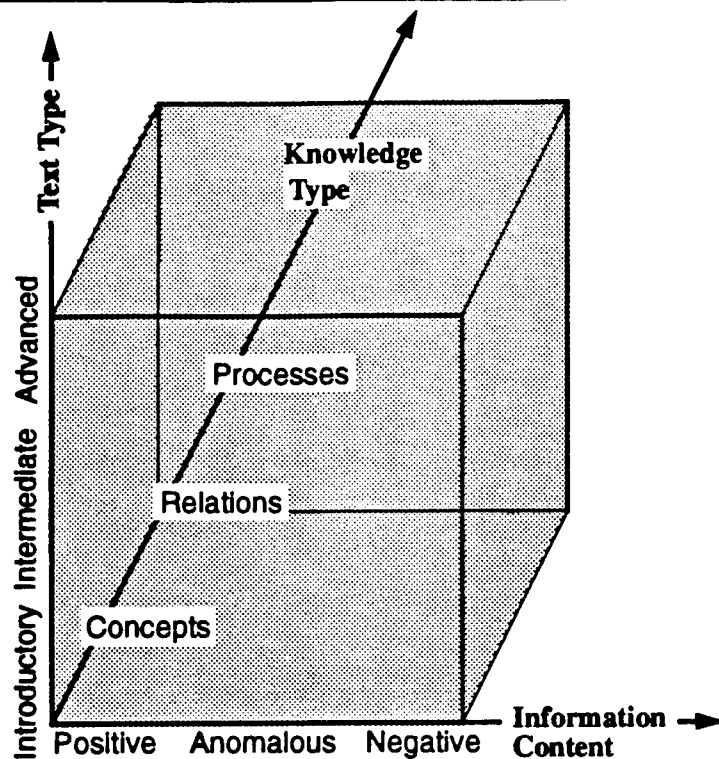


Figure 4.6: The three dimensions used in categorization.

of the function reflect this fact. Similarly, *processes*, which are sequences of functions are described differently and their examples are often instances of function parameters at every step in the sequence. In generating examples of relations, it is important to keep in consideration that the examples used as input-output parameters must be known to the hearer. Also, since anomalous or pathological examples of concepts used as either input or output examples for examples of relations often result in anomalous examples of relations, the examples must be chosen carefully.

Examples of processes consist of chains of events that take place in a particular order. The goal is to communicate the *sequence of events* and their *cumulative effect*. In case the reader does not know about certain relations or concepts involved in the steps of the routine, the generator must adequately explain such relations or concepts as well. This is to ensure that the hearer is familiar with the rest of the steps in the sequence before the difficult examples are encountered.

## 4.4 Discussion

In this chapter, we have presented one method of categorizing example types. Such a categorization is important, because different situations often require the presentation of different types of examples with specific presentation requirements about the number of examples, the sequence of presentation, the associated prompts, etc. (Engelmann and Carnine, 1982). A specification of the different presentation requirements is particularly important in designing an effective explanation system. We have argued that examples must be characterized based on the context in which they appear. We have presented one such characterization, and illustrated it with examples from our corpus.

Our categorization is a generalization of the previous work by Michener and Polya, and extends the scope of the characterization to take into account the surrounding context of the example. This is important in generating well integrated text and examples. The categories along each of the three dimensions that we have mentioned can be sub-divided further into smaller classes and specific presentation methods can be associated with each class.

This categorization is not specific to a particular architecture for generation, and can be easily incorporated into any system such as CEG (Suthers and Rissland, 1988) or HYPO (Ashley, 1991). The dimensions can be further refined or modified if necessary to suit particular applications: for instance, recent work on categorizing *dialectical examples* (Ashley and Aleven, 1992) can be easily incorporated into our framework by further dividing the positive example category into 'representational,' 'conflict resolution,' 'ceteris paribus' and 'coherence' categories.<sup>4</sup> Our categorization is general in the sense that it does not depend upon the aspect an example is supposed to illustrate. Given a particular context in a particular application domain, our classification scheme can be further refined into many different sub-categories. In addition, this categorization can help a system partition the search in the example knowledge base for suitable examples. Given that a particular concept needs to be illustrated, the system need only consider examples that meet the classification criteria, for instance, positive, simple (introductory texts) and of a concept.

The following chapter describes an implemented system to generate integrated descriptions.

---

<sup>4</sup>These categories are all defined as positive examples, with different characteristics, depending upon the feature(s) they illustrate in the context of legal reasoning.

## Chapter 5

### The System Implementation

In the previous chapters, we have presented the motivation, related work, relevant issues, and a categorization of different example types. In this chapter, we describe an implementation of a system capable of generating descriptions with integrated text and examples. The system consists of four major components: the text planner, the example generator, the knowledge representation, and the english interface (the grammar interface and the sentence realizer). As the basis for our implementation, we use the EES text planning system (Moore and Paris, 1989; Moore and Paris, 1988; Moore, 1989), to which we have added an example generator that retrieves/constructs actual examples given a specification of what is required. The planning system has access to several knowledge sources, such as the domain knowledge, the user model and the dialogue history containing a record of the previous discourse. While planning, the system passes requests for examples to the example generator. The output of the planning phase is a discourse structure tree, which is then passed through an interface and a sentence generator to produce english. A block diagram of the overall architecture is shown in Figure 5.1.

The rest of this chapter describes the text planner, the knowledge representation and the example generator in more detail.

#### 5.1 The Text Planner

The system uses a text planning framework to plan the overall discourse in terms of high level communicative goals. It uses a hierarchical, linear planning mechanism -- based on the STRIPS planner (Fikes and Nilsson, 1990) -- to plan the structure of the discourse: given a top level communicative goal, the system finds plans capable of achieving this goal. Plans typically post further sub-goals to be satisfied, and planning continues until primitive speech acts -- i.e., directly realizable in English -- are achieved. The result of the planning process is a discourse tree, where the nodes represent goals at various levels of abstraction with the root being the initial goal, and the leaves representing primitive realization statements, such as (INFORM ...) statements.

To ensure that the generated text is coherent, the system selects plan operators such that each communicative goal in the discourse tree is related to adjacent communicative goals through *coherence relations*. Coherence relations are used to generate appropriate connectives during the realization phase. We use relations from Rhetorical Structure Theory (RST) (Mann and Thompson, 1988) as our set of coherence relations.

The resulting discourse tree is then passed to a grammar interface which converts it into a set of inputs suitable for input to a sentence generator, which results in the actual english output. A

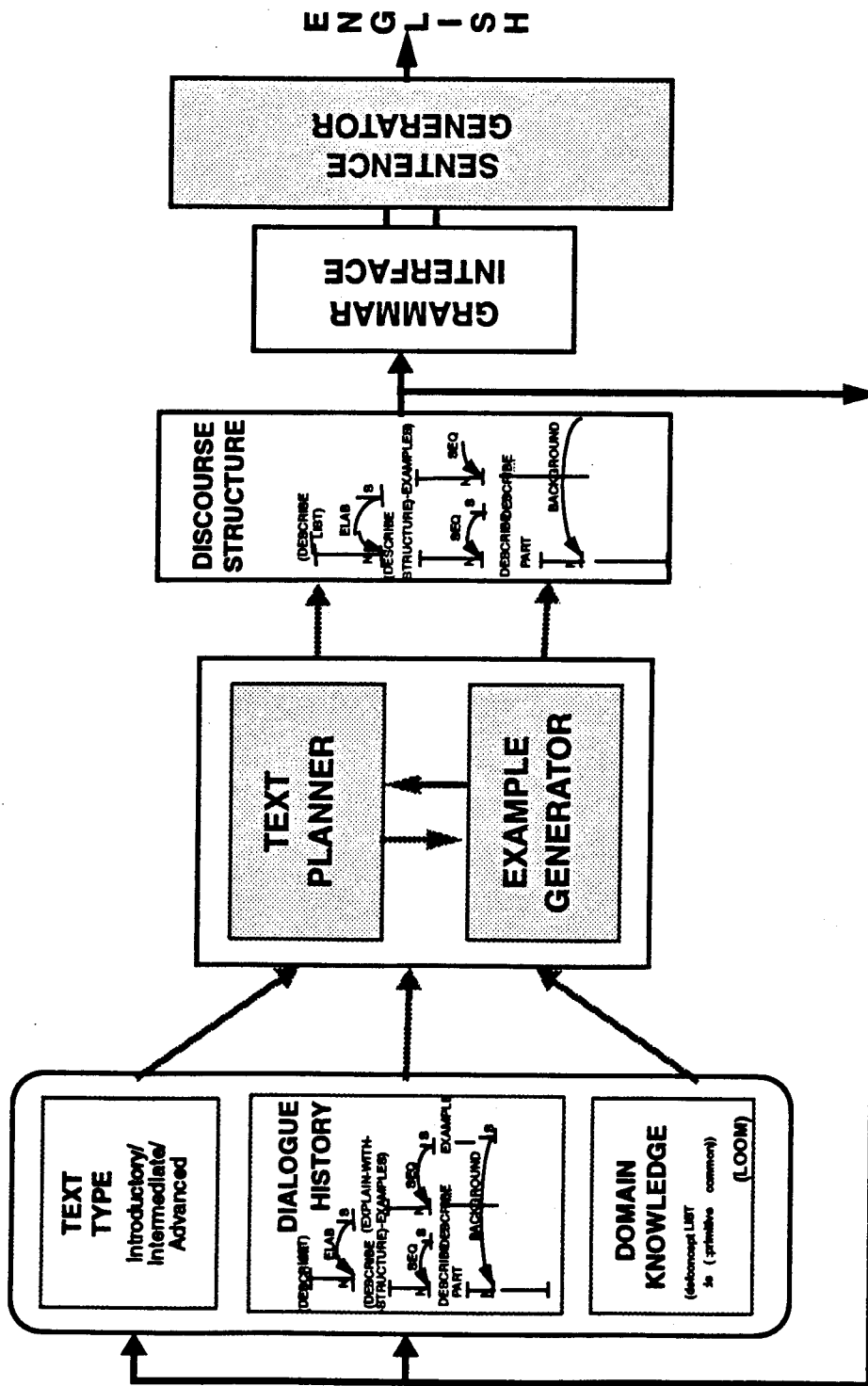


Figure 5.1: A block diagram of the overall system.

---

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :EFFECT (elaboration-by-example ?ftr ?object)
  :CONSTRAINTS (and (isa? ?object concept)
                    (get-example-available ?example ?ftr ?object)
                    (prompt-required? ?example ?ftr ?object))
  :NUCLEUS (bel hearer (present-example ?example))
  :SATELLITES (elaboration (example-prompt ?ftr ?object))))

```

Figure 5.2: Sample Text Plan Operator.

---

detailed description of the system can be seen in (Moore, 1989; Moore and Paris, 1989; Paris, 1991; Moore and Paris, 1993; Moore and Paris, 1992).

### 5.1.1 Plan Operators

Plan operators describe how to achieve a communicative goal. They are designed by studying (large) corpora of natural language texts and transcripts. They include conditions for their applicability. These conditions can refer to resources like the system knowledge base (KB), the user model, or the context (i.e., the dialogue context, the current text being generated, the text type, etc.). A sample text plan operator is shown in Figure 5.2. The operator has four slots:

**EFFECT:** a specification of the goals that the plan operator may be capable of achieving; in the case of the plan operator in Figure 5.2, the EFFECT specifies that the operator can achieve the goal of presenting an example of an object (the variable ?object) to illustrate a particular feature (the variable ?ftr)

**CONSTRAINTS:** the pre-conditions that must be true in the environment for the operator to be selected. These constraints can be either predicates, or functions that bind variables to specific values. For instance, in the case of Figure 5.2, the constraints check: (i) whether the object being described is a *concept* (as opposed to a relation, or a process, for instance); (ii) whether an example is available (can either be retrieved or constructed) to illustrate the feature ?ftr in the object ?object -- this will cause the generation of the actual example, and if successful, bind it to the variable ?example; if there is no example that can be either found or constructed, this constraint will fail, causing this plan operator to not be selected; (iii) whether a prompt is required for the example selected (?example) for the object (?object) for feature (?ftr). Of the three constraints therefore, the first and the third constraints are purely predicate in nature, while the second one actually binds a variable with a new value.

**NUCLEUS and SATELLITE:** according to RST, the communicative goal specified in the EFFECT slot can be achieved by providing some information: this information can often be further partitioned into two parts: (i) information playing the *central* role, which must necessarily be communicated: this is represented by the goal in the NUCLEUS; (ii) information playing a supportive role; such information is often used as background material, or as elaboration upon the information in the NUCLEUS: this is represented by the goal in the SATELLITE position. Information in the SATELLITE is often not *required* for the original discourse goal to be satisfied; in such cases, the SATELLITE may be marked '\*optional\*.' As stated earlier, the sibling goals posted as a result of the NUCLEUS and SATELLITE subgoals must be related through the use of coherence relations: in this case, the

relation 'elaboration' marks the relationship of the information in the SATELLITE to that in the NUCLEUS.

In this framework, experimenting with additional sources of knowledge in the planner is not difficult, because these additional sources can be added to the system by incorporating additional constraints in the plan operators which reference these resources. In this system examples are generated by explicitly posting a goal within the text planning system: i.e., some of the plan operators used in the system include the generation of examples as one of their steps, when applicable. (Figure 5.2 shows a sample plan operator that can be used to present examples.) This ensures that the examples embody specific information that either illustrates or complements the information in the accompanying textual description. A snap shot of the screen with the text planner is shown in Figure 5.3. This shows the discourse structure being constructed, the plan operator being evaluated by the system at that time, and another window with a trace containing information on constraints being tested.

At present, the system has about 60 plan operators in our domain of software documentation that deal with the generation of concept descriptions with examples.

## 5.2 The Knowledge Representation

Our system is part of the documentation facility we are building for the Explainable Expert Systems (EES) Project (Swartout *et al.*, 1992), a framework for building expert systems capable of explaining their reasoning as well as their domain knowledge. In EES, a user specifies a domain model in the high level knowledge representation language LOOM (MacGregor, 1988),<sup>1</sup> as well as problem solving principles, i.e., methods for solving problems in the domain. Given these and a variabilized goal to achieve, EES generates an expert system to solve goals of the same form.

The problem solving methods have to be written in a specific plan language, INTEND, which was designed specifically for the project, with the goal of facilitating explanations. INTEND is specified in the Backus-Naur Form (BNF), a fragment of which is shown in Figure 5.4. The grammar contains productions, and, optionally 'filter functions' on the productions, i.e., tests that have to be satisfied before the production can be selected. For instance, 'pred-relation-form-test' is a filter-function defined on the *pred-relation-form* production. The grammar of INTEND is quite complex, and thus provides a good test-bed for a documentation facility. With such an on-line facility, users can get information as to what might be wrong when a plan does not parse, as well as descriptions of the various constructs involved, together with examples.

To generate documentation, the system must first convert the BNF-representation of the grammar to an equivalent LOOM representation. In our system, the BNF grammar is specified using POPART (Wile, 1987). The POPART representation of the BNF form can be easily converted (in most cases) to the desired LOOM representation.

The BNF representation must first be converted to LOOM for use by the generation facility; the form

`A := B C;`

is represented in LOOM as:

```
(defconcept A
  :is (:and B (:the grammar-sequence C)))
```

i.e., concept A consists of concept B followed by (related by the relation named *grammar-sequence* to) concept C; the form

`A := B | C;`

---

<sup>1</sup>Loom is a KL-ONE type language.

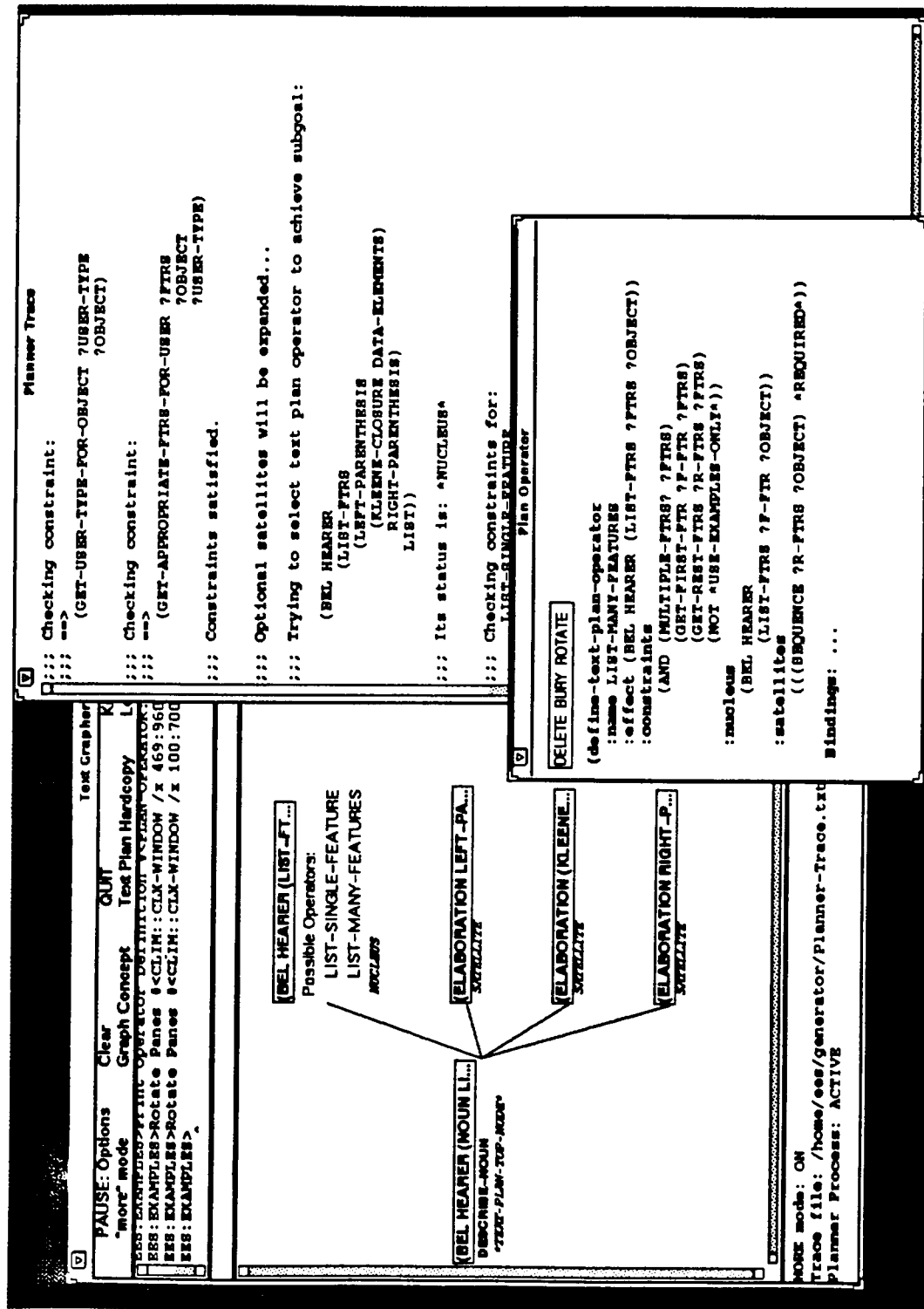


Figure 5.3: A snapshot of the system interface.

---

```

action-role-form :=
  '( action-role-name restricted-expression ' ) ;

predicate-form :=
  pred-value-form | pred-relation-form |
  pred-logical-form | pred-action-form || ;

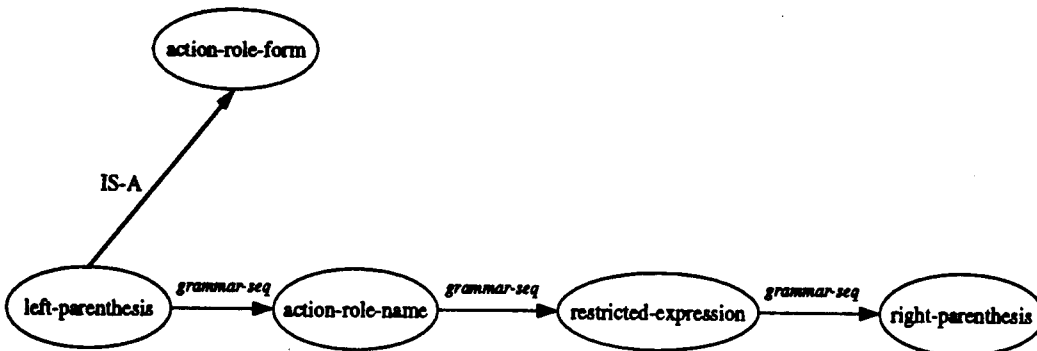
pred-relation-form :=
  '( relation-description restricted-expression + ' )
  |> predicate-relation-form-test ;

```

---

Figure 5.4: A fragment of the EES grammar.

---



```

(defconcept ACTION-ROLE-FORM
  is (:and left-parenthesis
    (:the grammar-sequence
      (:and action-role-name
        (:the grammar-sequence
          (:and restricted-expression
            (:the grammar-sequence right-parenthesis)))))))

```

Figure 5.5: Representing BNF productions in LOOM.

---

is represented as a disjoint covering (B or C) under concept A.

```

(defconcept A
  :disjoint-covering (B C))

```

Consider also the grammar fragment shown in Figure 5.4. The first production specifies that an `action-role-form` is an `action-role-name` followed by a `restricted-expression`, with both of these enclosed by parentheses. This is represented in LOOM as shown in Figure 5.5. 'grammar-seq' is a relation defined to order the grammar symbols in the correct sequence. The non-terminal 'predicate-form' can be easily represented in LOOM as a disjunction of the four possibilities.

The production 'pred-relation-form' is one that cannot be completely represented in LOOM automatically. This is due to the fact that the specification of a `pred-relation-form` is more than just the syntactic specification of `restricted-expressions` following a `relation-description`; the

POPART representation also specifies that the form must satisfy the test represented by the filter function 'predicate-relation-form-test.' These tests are defined in POPART to enforce non-syntactic constraints. For instance, in this case, the predicate-relation-form-test checks to see whether the number of restricted-expressions in the parse tree is equal to the arity of the relation-description. This is specified in the form of LISP code, and this information must be manually added as an annotation to the automatically generated LOOM definition of the concept.

Most BNF forms can be translated into an equivalent LOOM form in a straightforward fashion. Occasionally, however, certain constructs are more difficult to translate. The *kleene-closure* is one example of a construct that maps differently into LOOM. Consider the POPART and LOOM descriptions of a list as given in Figures 5.6 and 5.7 respectively. Since there can be any number of data elements in a list, some of which could be embedded lists, the system must necessarily be able to count the number of left and right parentheses in addition to checking for the types of data elements. Both of these -- lists being part of lists, and the need for counting parentheses -- cause problems in the representation for KL-ONE type languages (Patil, 1993). To get around this problem, it becomes necessary to 'escape' to the Lisp level. In LOOM, this can be done through the use of the "predicate" feature, which allows the definition of a Lisp predicate that can be used by LOOM in testing for membership for a class. The LOOM description of a list, along with the required LISP predicate -- the function 'loom-list-p' -- used to determine whether a given instance classifies under the description or not is shown in Figure 5.8. However, this results in a LOOM representation that cannot be easily used by the text planner (which expects the syntactical (BNF) information expressed in terms of LOOM relations and concepts and not embedded in LISP code). It is thus necessary to add the structural/syntactic information about lists that the text planner expects and needs to generate from. In our domain, the list concept is represented as shown in Figure 5.9.

There are many advantages to using a representation such as LOOM; the main one is the availability of the classifier mechanism. As we describe in the following section, the classifier allows the generation system to do two tasks very easily: (i) to categorize different features in an example as being either critical or variable, and (ii) to determine if a negative example generated by the system is 'interesting' or not.

## 5.3 The Example Generator

This section deals with the generation of examples to be used in the presentation. As discussed in Section 5.1, the text planner posts explicit goals to present examples as part of the overall description. In this section, we discuss issues such as the construction, storage and retrieval of examples, the determination of their critical and variable features and whether prompts are required.

### 5.3.1 Construction of Examples

Examples can either be retrieved from a pre-existing Example Knowledge Base, as in HYPO (Ashley, 1991), or can be constructed, as in CEG (Suthers and Rissland, 1988). Our system uses both *construction* and *retrieval* to find suitable examples. Initially, the system possesses examples of the primitive grammar elements such as atoms, numbers, strings, etc., in the LISP domain. Examples of such elements are therefore always retrieved. When the system needs to present an example of a more complex grammar symbol, such as a list, for instance, the system constructs the example based on the BNF definition of a list, as well as the features being illustrated. Unlike HYPO, which used 12 pre-defined features as indices, our system uses LOOM to allow us to retrieve examples with as few, or as many indices as necessary; the greater the number of indices specified in the retrieve, the fewer the number of possibilities returned by LOOM for consideration.

---

```

data-element := symbol | number | character | list ;

list := ' ( {data-element *} ) ' ;

```

Figure 5.6: Description of a list in POPART.

---

```

(defconcept data-element
  :is (:or symbol number character list))

(defconcept list
  :is (:and grammar-symbol (:predicate (?x) (LOOM-LIST-P ?x))))

```

Figure 5.7: Description of a list in LOOM.

---

```

(defun LOOM-LIST-P (x)
  (declare (special parens no-error))
  (setf no-error t)
  (cond ((loom-type-p x 'left-parenthesis)
        (setf parens 1) (loom-list-1-p (get-range x 'grammar-sequence))
        (and no-error (zerop parens)))
        (t nil)))

(defun LOOM-LIST-1-P (x)
  (cond ((null x) nil)
        ((loom-type-p x 'left-parenthesis) (setf parens (+ parens 1)))
        ((loom-type-p x 'data-elements))
        ((loom-type-p x 'right-parenthesis) (setf parens (- parens 1)))
        (t (setf no-error nil)))
  (if (and x (get-range x 'grammar-sequence))
      (loom-list-1-p (get-range x 'grammar-sequence))))

```

Figure 5.8: The predicate used by LOOM to check for a list.

---

```

(defconcept list
  :is (:and grammar-symbol (:predicate (?x) (loom-list-p ?x)))
  :annotations ((syntax
                  (left-parenthesis (kleene-closure data-elements )
                                     right-parenthesis))))

```

Figure 5.9: LOOM description of a list.

---

The example generator takes as input the list of features for a concept that needs to be illustrated by presenting an example of a particular object. The syntactic specification of the function and a typical call to it are given below:<sup>2</sup>

```
function: get-example  
(get-example ?concept ?features ?object)
```

```
typical call:  
(get-example 'data-element '(atom number) 'list)
```

In the function above, *?concept* refers to the concept being illustrated, *?features* specify the features of the concept that the example should try and illustrate, and *?object* is the object whose example should be presented. Thus, in the instantiated function call shown above, the system constructs an example of a *list*, where the concept to be illustrated is that of a *data element*, and the features that need to be highlighted are the facts that a data element can be either an *atom* or a *number*. The resulting output from such a function call would be

```
(oranges 5)
```

The function accesses global constraints such as the text type to determine the type of elements required; in the case of the advanced text type, the element representing the number could have been a more complex, floating point number (this is done by specifying default types for the text type: lacking any further information, if a number is required for use in an example in an advanced text, the system will retrieve a floating point number, as opposed to an integer).

The function *get-example* also takes an optional parameter, the *k1-cl-number*, which represents the number of elements desired for the feature in the concept that happens to be defined as a *kleene-closure*. In the case of a *list*, for instance, the BNF definition (in POPART notation) is:

```
list := '( data-elements * ');
```

Since the default value of the *k1-cl-number* is one, if the parameter is not specified, the system will generate examples of lists with one *data-element* if no other information is available. In cases such as the one above, where the features to be exemplified are specified (in the variable *features*), the system will generate examples taking both the *k1-cl-number* and the features into account. The generated examples are then also stored in the knowledge base.

If the system is successful in generating an appropriate example, that example is then stored in LOOM as an example for the concept. Given the classification facility in LOOM, this is automatically indexed underneath a *list*, as well as any other grammar symbols it is applicable to. The next time the system needs to generate an example for the same features, the system can retrieve this example, rather than constructing one from scratch.

The function *get-example*, described here, is a relatively low-level function, in that it takes a very specific request for the object, as well as the features that need to be highlighted. This was done so as to make the text plan operators more explicit. The reasoning to determine the number and order of examples to be presented, determining the critical and variable features, etc., is represented clearly in different constraints on the plan operators and are the focus of this study. This allows for easy modification of different strategies to observe their effects on the plan generated.

---

<sup>2</sup>In the actual implementation, the function takes other arguments as well; these are to do with the variable that needs to be instantiated with the example, etc.

The next few subsections describe how the example generation component determines the critical and variable features, generates 'interesting' negative examples and, if necessary, prompts, for the examples.

### 5.3.2 Determining Critical Features

As we mentioned earlier, in Section 3.6, it is essential to convey to the user that some of the concept features are *required* for any instance to be an example of the concept. These features are referred to as *critical* features. To be able to emphasize the critical nature of a feature, the system can (in tutorial contexts), present a pair of examples, one positive and one negative, identical in all respects, except for the critical feature being emphasized. To be able to do so, the system must be able to determine which of the many features of the concept are critical, and which are not.

In our system, the representation of the domain model in LOOM allows us to determine critical features relatively easily. This is because the classification facility in LOOM allows the system to query it regarding relationships between concepts and instances. This allows the system to determine whether a particular feature is critical or not, by simply modifying the value of each feature along various dimensions and then testing (querying LOOM) to see if the modified instance still classifies as an instance of the original object. We have defined for our domain a number of ways to modify the definition of a concept.<sup>3</sup> The system successively attempts these operators on the given concept definition, and finds those features whose modification causes the example to fail to classify under the object being explained. The modifications attempted by the system are given in Figure 5.10.

The generate-and-test approach taken by the system to determine whether a particular feature is critical or not is inefficient compared to say an alternative approach based on analytically examining the LOOM definition and determining the features from there. This, however, is not possible in our case, because certain constructs such as the kleene-closure in BNF cannot be represented in the LOOM semantics. Since these constructs are essential, they are represented as predicates in LISP that are used by LOOM during classification and matching. These predicates thus cannot be examined analytically to determine the critical and variable features, and it is therefore necessary to use the generate-and-test approach to classify the features as such. The representation of a list in LISP, which is defined using a kleene-closure will be seen in Chapter 6.

There are a total of seven ways along two dimensions with which the system attempts to modify each feature of a concept definition in this domain to try and find a critical feature. Two of the seven ways in which the systems attempts modification are with respect to the *number* dimension; the remaining five are with respect to the *type* dimension. We shall illustrate the working of the algorithm by taking the example of the concept *list* in the LISP domain. In the case of the introductory text type, the system retrieves the syntactic, surface features for presentation. These are the left parenthesis, the data elements, and the right parenthesis. Given these three features, the system must now determine which of these features are critical and which are variable. The system attempts to generate and test different instances created from modifying the definition of a *list*. As stated above, the system attempts to modify features along two dimensions:

**Number Dimension:** First, the system attempts to see if *deleting* the feature under consideration from the definition causes the system to classify this modified instance wrongly. If it does, the feature is marked as being critical. Secondly, the system checks to see whether *adding* an extra element identical to the feature causes the system to find the modified instance as belonging to another class. In both these cases, the fact that the feature is critical with regard to the number is noted by the system. Thus, if the BNF definition is of the form

<sup>3</sup>It is possible that these modifications will not be applicable in many domains; the alternative (to not using such domain specific modification information) is to use a representation as in CEG (Suthers and Riasland, 1988), in which every concept contained annotations on how various features could be modified.

---

For each feature in the set of input features, determine if the feature is a critical feature by creating an instance of a modified definition and checking whether the (modified) instance classifies under the original definition. The modified definitions are created by varying each feature in the definition as follows:

1. *Varying the Number:*

- (a) modify the definition by omitting the feature from the definition
- (b) modify the definition by adding another symbol of the same type as the current symbol in the definition

if in either of these two cases, the modified instance fails to classify under the original definition, mark the feature as being critical along the number dimension.

2. *Varying the Type:*

if the feature is a terminal symbol:

- (a) modify the definition by substituting the feature with another terminal symbol of the same type
- (b) modify the definition by substituting the feature with a terminal symbol of another type

else if the feature is a non-terminal symbol:

- (a) modify the definition by substituting the feature with the superconcept of the feature
- (b) modify the definition by substituting the feature with the subconcept of the feature
- (c) modify the definition by substituting the feature with the sibling concept of the feature

if in any of these cases, the modified instance fails to classify under the original definition, mark the type of the feature as a critical feature.

Figure 5.10: Determining the Critical Features of a Concept in BNF.

---

A -- grammar-seq -- B -- grammar-seq -- C

the system successively considers modified definitions of the form:

A -- grammar-seq -- A -- grammar-seq -- B -- grammar-seq -- C  
A -- grammar-seq -- B -- grammar-seq -- B -- grammar-seq -- C  
⋮

see if in any of these cases, the modified concept description still classifies as a subconcept of the original concept.

For the case of a list, instances of a list are created from modified definitions and tested to see whether they classify under the original definition of a list. Modifications along the number dimension, such as reducing the number of parentheses by one, or adding an extra parenthesis, cause the instances to not classify under the original definition. Thus, both the left and the right parentheses

are marked as critical.<sup>4</sup> On the other hand, modifications to the number of data elements in the list, by either deleting one, or adding one, do not result in the instance failing to classify as a list. At this point therefore, the data elements are not classified as critical features.

**Type Dimension:** There are a number of different ways in which the system attempts to modify a feature by varying the type dimension:

**Terminals:** If the feature being considered happens to be a terminal symbol (the POPART-to-LOOM transformer marks the grammar symbols appropriately as being terminal and non-terminal symbols based on their BNF representation), the system modifies the definition of the concept in two ways: (i) by replacing the symbol with another terminal symbol of the same type. For instance, if the terminal symbol happened to be a number, say 2, the system would try to replace 2 with another number, for instance, 7. (ii) by replacing the terminal symbol with another terminal symbol of another type. For instance, in the previous case, the system could attempt to replace the number 2 with a character, such as 'a'. In the case of the list, the system can attempt to replace the left-parenthesis with another terminal symbol, such as the right-parenthesis, and in the second case, by a keyword, such as 'defun'. If in either of these cases, an instance of the modified definition did not classify as an instance of the original definition, the system would mark the fact that the type of the feature was a critical feature.

**Non-Terminals:** If the feature being considered is a non-terminal symbol, the system attempts to modify the definition by changing the symbol in three different ways: (i) by replacing it with a superconcept, (ii) by replacing it with a sub-concept, and (iii) by replacing it with a sibling concept. In the case of the list, case (i) is not applicable, because data-element is the most general type in the representation of a list, since it is the disjunction of the symbol, number, and list types; case (ii) could result in the system replacing data-element with another type such as number, and case (iii) is again not applicable in the case of data-element. Since a list of numbers is still a valid list, the type aspect of data-elements is not marked as being a critical feature for a list.

The algorithm is also given in Figure 5.10.<sup>5</sup> The algorithm allows the system to determine the critical features of a concept. Once these features have been determined, the system caches these values so that it does not have to repeat this reasoning the next time it has to determine critical features for the same object and is given the same set of input features.

As in the case of *get-example*, the function to find the critical features of an object has been designed for use as a function in the CONSTRAINTS of a text plan operator. The function is given a list of features and an object, and returns those features from the set that are critical. A typical call is shown below:

```
function: select-critical-features
(select-critical-features ?features ?object)

typical call:
(select-critical-features
 '(left-parenthesis (kleene-closure data-elements)
                    right-parenthesis)
 'list)
```

In this case, the function call returns:

---

<sup>4</sup>Currently, the system does not attempt to vary more than one feature at a time while trying to determine the nature of the features. Thus, the system does not attempt to add/delete both the parentheses and see whether the resulting construct would still classify as a list or something else.

<sup>5</sup>Note that this algorithm is a superset of the algorithm used by LEX (Mitchell *et al.*, 1983) to generate new problems: LEX only attempted substitution of a term with a sibling term.

(left-parenthesis right-parenthesis)

The function *selects* critical features from a list of features passed to it, rather than *finding* the critical features, because different cases may require the presentation of different sets of features. For instance, the generation of descriptions for introductory and advanced texts requires the presentation of quite different amounts and types of information in many domains. Thus, in our system, the constraints in the plan operator first select the appropriate features for the given text type from the LOOM representation, and then, determine the critical features from this set of features to be presented.

### 5.3.3 Determining Variable Features

As in the case of critical features, the system must know which features are variable in nature. A knowledge of the variable features then allows the system to illustrate the variability by presenting multiple positive examples that vary in the variable features. Since variable features are not critical features, if the critical features for a concept are known, the system can attempt to prune the set of features to be considered by removing the critical features.<sup>6</sup> The remaining features are then processed exactly in the same manner in which the critical features are determined; the only difference is that the systems tests for successful classification (rather than a failure to classify) after each modification. Each feature is varied along both the type, and the number dimensions as in the previous case regarding the critical features:

- **Number Dimension:**

- vary the definition by omitting the current feature from the definition
- vary the definition by adding another feature of the same type as the current feature

- **Type Dimension:**

- if feature is a terminal: attempt replacements with (i) other terminals of the same type, and (ii) terminals of another type
- if feature is a non-terminal: attempt replacements with subtype, supertype and sibling types

If instances created from the modified definitions still classify under the original definition of the concept, the feature is marked appropriately as a variable feature. As we mentioned previously, LOOM allows us to determine the class of the description very simply with its classification mechanism. As in the case of critical features, the variable features of the object are cached upon computation so that future calls to the function can be answered using simple retrieves.

Features of a concept can be critical and variable at the same time--along different dimensions. Consider the case of the operator PLUS in LISP for instance. While the number of arguments that follow the operator are not critical, the type of the arguments is--they should be numbers. Similarly, in the case of the operator CONS in LISP, the number of arguments is critical, while their type is not. It is therefore important to identify not just whether a feature is critical or variable,<sup>7</sup> but also in what respect.

---

<sup>6</sup>The reasoning mechanism which determines the critical features also uses this null intersection criteria to prune the set of features it has to consider in finding critical features.

<sup>7</sup>All features are either critical or variable, depending upon their role in the concept definition. However, some critical features such as parentheses in LISP are so ubiquitous that they can be a distraction when discussing complex constructs. To handle this aspect, we shall introduce the concept of *fixed features*, which are critical features and therefore appear in all examples, but are not explicitly used by the system to generate negative examples, or commented upon. We shall see an example of these fixed features in Chapter 7.

---

(GREEN GRASS BLUE SKIES)	; list of symbols
GREEN GRASS BLUE SKIES	; not a list
(AARDVARK)	; a list of one symbol
AARDVARK	; an ATOM, not a list.

Figure 5.11: Some negative examples are more interesting than others.

---

### 5.3.4 Finding Interesting Negative Examples

An important aspect in generating tutorial descriptions is the presentation of negative examples. Negative examples need to be presented to highlight the critical aspects of the concept being described. However, since there can be different negative examples that can be used in any given situation, it is beneficial to use examples that are 'interesting' in some sense, rather than any random example. Consider for instance, the case of a list in Figure 5.11. In this case, let us consider the two parentheses (left and right), as being one atomic unit in the grammar; i.e., the parentheses are either removed, or added, only as pairs. In the two pairs of positive-negative examples presented there, both the pairs emphasize the critical nature of the parentheses. However, the second pair of examples is more pedagogical, because it conveys not only the fact that the negative example is not a list, but *also* that it is an atom. It is therefore important to find such 'interesting' negative examples, if they are available. Note also that this allows the system to opportunistically include more material if so desired (with a CONTRAST relation).

In our system, finding interesting negative examples is made quite easy using the classification mechanism in LOOM. Each time the system finds a critical feature, it tests to see whether the modification causing the example to become negative also causes the example to classify under *another* description in the knowledge base. If it does, the system marks this critical feature, as well as the classification of the negative example, and uses this in preference to some other example.

This method of finding interesting negative examples is very dependent on the availability of a classification mechanism.<sup>8</sup> While the previously mentioned use of LOOM (in determining critical and variable features) could possibly be implemented even without the use of a classifier, finding interesting negative examples would be much harder to implement without this capability.

### 5.3.5 Example Complexity and Sequencing

An important issue in the presentation of examples is the issue of sequencing their presentation appropriately. As discussed in Section 3.6, the order of presentation is, in general, dependent on the relative complexity of the features of the concept to be presented. There are two levels at which the sequencing needs to be planned:

- at the *feature* level, where the system must decide which features need to be presented first. This will determine the presentation order of example sets illustrating each feature.

---

<sup>8</sup>Classification – structural subsumption – is theoretically undecidable (Doyle and Patil, 1991). However, for certain restricted languages, exponential algorithms to determine whether one description logically entails another exist, and are widely used.

---

The complexity of the feature *ftr* is defined as:

1. if *terminal(ftr)* then *complexity(ftr)* = 1
2. if *non-terminal(ftr)* and the right-hand side (RHS) of the grammar production is a disjunction, then *complexity(ftr)* is equal to the sum of the complexities of the types in the disjunction on the RHS.
3. if *non-terminal(ftr)* and the RHS of the production is not a disjunction, then *complexity(ftr)* is equal to the product of the complexities of each of the elements in the RHS.
4. if *kleene-closure(ftr)*, and the *ftr* is defined as a disjunction of *n* types, then *complexity(ftr)* is equal to

$$2^{n-1} * \text{complexity}(\text{type}_1) + \dots + 2^{n-1} * \text{complexity}(\text{type}_n)$$

5. if *recursive(ftr)* then *complexity(ftr)* =  $\infty$

Figure 5.12: Determining syntactic complexity of a term in the BNF domain.

---

- at the individual *example* level, where the system must determine how examples *within* each example set (illustrating a feature) need to be sequenced.

The complexity of a feature, or a concept in a domain cannot be determined completely independently of the domain: in our case (using BNF grammars for programming languages), the syntactic complexity of a particular construct is computed as follows:

- if the feature is a terminal symbol, the complexity measure of that feature is considered to be 1. Thus, the complexity measures of terminal symbols such as *left-parenthesis*, characters, such as *a*, *b*, etc., numbers such as 5 and 7, are all 1. This is because a terminal symbol can be considered a constant and needs only one example to illustrate.
- if the feature is a non-terminal symbol where the non-terminal symbol is a disjunction of different types, then the complexity measure of the feature is the sum of the complexity measures of the different types in the disjunction. For instance, if *data-element* is a non-terminal defined as follows:

```
data-element := symbol | number | string | character | list;
```

then the complexity measure of *data-element* is defined to be the sum of the complexity-measures of *symbol*, *number*, *string*, *character*, and *list*.

This is because the number of examples that would be required to communicate the different features of the non-terminal on the left hand side of the production would be equal to the sum of the examples required for each of the right hand side elements. In the simplest case, if the right hand side consisted only of a number of terminal symbols, the complexity of the non-terminal on the left hand side would be the number of terminals in the disjunction.

- if the feature is a non-terminal symbol which is not defined as a disjunction, then the complexity of the symbol is the product of the complexity of each of the elements in right-hand side (RHS) of the production. In this case, the complexity reflects the fact that the total number of examples needed to illustrate this non-terminal would be the total number of legal permutations possible for the production. For instance, consider the definition of a *list*:

`list := left-parenthesis {data-elements +} right-parenthesis ;`

In this case, the complexity measure of the symbol `list` is the product of the complexity measures of a `left-parenthesis`, the term `{data-element +}` and the `right-parenthesis`.

- the complexity of a kleene-closure of a symbol (such as `{data-elements +}`), is computed by calculating the sum of the products of the complexity of each of the symbol's derived types, and the number of examples that each of these derived types can occur in. Since a kleene-closure of a symbol represents the power set of all of the symbol's derived types, the total number of examples that a particular type can appear in is  $2^{n-1}$  where  $n$  is the total number of derived types. For example, the complexity of the kleene-closure of `data-element` (the expression `{data-element +}`), could be computed as follows. If `data-element` is defined as a disjunction:

`data-elements := symbol | number | list;`

the derived types are: symbols, numbers and lists, and  $n$  is equal to 3.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{complexity}(\{\text{data-elements} +\}) &= 2^2 * \text{complexity}(\text{symbol}) \\ &+ 2^2 * \text{complexity}(\text{number}) + 2^2 * \text{complexity}(\text{list}) \end{aligned}$$

The rationale for this complexity measure lies in the fact that a kleene-closure can vary in two dimensions: (i) in the number of elements per set (ii) the type of elements in each set. Thus, the total number of examples necessary for illustrating a term defined as a kleene-closure is the total number of examples in the power set, plus the additional examples generated due to the variable nature of each of the derived terms that are part of the examples. If the complexity measure of each of the derived types is 1 (for instance, if all of the derived types were terminal symbols), then the complexity of the term under consideration is equal to  $2^n$ , where  $n$  is the number of derived types (this represents the power set of the derived types).

- if the feature is a recursive non-terminal (i.e., the non-terminal on the left-hand side of the production also appears on the right-hand side of the production), then the complexity of the feature is considered to be *infinity*. This is because the feature can potentially need an infinite number of examples to illustrate all the possible cases.

The algorithm is summarized in Figure 5.12. The algorithm is invoked by the top-level function `ORDER-BY-COMPLEXITY`, which is the function used in the `CONSTRAINTS` of the plan operators. This function also takes into account certain annotations which indicate whether the feature is a variable one. In the case of variable features, there are two ways in which they can vary: the *number* and the *type*. Given the goal of generating examples for two variable aspects of a feature, the system compares the relative complexity of the two features. For instance, in illustrating the variable nature of `data-element` of a `list`, the function would compare the complexity of the *number* aspect and the *type* aspect for `data-elements`. The 'number' aspect is computed as 2 (one example at each end of the range is desired to illustrate the variable nature: one with a small number of elements, and another with a large number of elements). The complexity of the 'type' aspect is computed by finding the number of sub-types of the given feature. This is because the system needs to present at least one example of each sub-type. The ordering of the presentation is then done on the basis of their relative complexities. In the case of the `data-elements` given above, since the type complexity is greater than 2, examples illustrating the variable nature of the 'number' aspect are presented before the examples illustrating the 'type' aspect.

Apart from the complexity measure mentioned above, there is one more constraint that can sometimes influence the order in which examples are presented: if there is a 'significant' negative example that the system needs to present to the user, and the text type is introductory, the system will need to generate additional text discussing the negative example (and its differences with the 'close' positive example). In this case, the system orders the examples such that the 'positive'--'interesting-negative' example pair is the last pair presented in the sequence. This allows the system to present

all the positive examples together, before presenting a discussion of the interesting negative example. (An instance of this case will be seen in Section 7.3.)

### 5.3.6 Generating Prompts

There is another aspect of the presentation that must be dealt with at the same time as the example generation. This is the issue of presenting prompts. As mentioned earlier (in Section 3.8), prompts are meant to convey additional information that can help focus the user's attention; while they can be pictorial, formatting directives (such as bold-face fonts, changes in color, etc.), or even animated characters, we only consider here the use of short phrases in text to achieve our purpose. Prompts are essential if the examples illustrate multiple features at the same time. Prompts become necessary:

- if the example retrieved by the system in response to a communicative goal happens to possess *more* (or *less* in the case of a negative example) features than the communicative goal specified; this can be determined by analysing the number of variable features that a positive example possesses (positive examples will possess all critical features) and comparing them with what was asked for; in the case of a negative example, since a negative example may be deficient in more than one critical feature, the numbers of both critical and variable features need to be observed. If the number of features in the goal and the examples generated do not match, it is desirable that prompts be generated to highlight those features in the examples that the goal was supposed to illustrate. In our system, this will result in generation of a prompt.
- if the examples are presented physically far away from the point where the concept being illustrated is mentioned in the textual description. This is one of the reasons why prompts are seen so often in reference manual style texts, because the text type prevents the generation of examples until the description is complete: this often results, in the case of long descriptions, in examples being placed away from the concept's mention.
- if the example is a result of combining more than one communicative goal: this may be either by design, as in the case of reference manual style texts, where goals to illustrate individual features are combined at the end to present one or two complex multi-featured examples, or serendipitously (as in the case of the planner finding two adjacent speech acts presenting examples that can fulfill each other's goal: an example of this occurs in a description of a list presented in the following chapter, where the following two goals are generated adjacent to each other in the discourse structure:

(PRESENT-EXAMPLE LIST (DATA-ELEMENT (NUMBER MULTIPLE)))  
(PRESENT-EXAMPLE LIST (DATA-ELEMENT (TYPE ATOMS)))

The first goal occurs as a result of another goal that illustrates how examples can contain different numbers of elements; as it happens, the planner generates an example of multiple elements that are *all atoms* to satisfy the goal. This example meets the requirements of the next goal, which specifies the need to generate an example of a list of atoms. In such cases, if the system folds these two goals into one, it needs to generate a prompt to highlight the fact that two features are being illustrated).

- It is also essential to explicitly mark an example as being either anomalous or exceptionally difficult (for instance recursive constructions of a concept, such as a list of lists): such marking can be done either through the use of prompts, or through the generation of appropriate background text before the example is actually presented. In introductory texts, the system usually generates background text; in the case of advanced texts prompts are preferred over text explaining the examples.

## 5.4 Status of the System

Our framework is thus centered around a text planner that generates text and posts explicit goals to generate examples that will be included in the description. Plans also indicate how and when to generate the prompt information. By appropriately modifying the constraints on each plan operator, we can investigate the effects of different resources in the framework. Our example generator uses the classifier mechanism in LOOM to determine critical and variable features, as well as interesting negative examples. We have devised a complexity heuristic for the BNF domain that works well in our application. We use this complexity information to devise the ordering of the examples in the presentation at the global level.

The system currently contains about 60 plan operators that generate descriptions with integrated text and examples. The operators can model various interaction effects between text and examples such as the introduction of 'interesting' negative examples in both LISP and the INTEND domains. The operators have been tested by planning the description of 20 LISP constructs and 10 constructs in INTEND;<sup>9</sup> these are shown in Appendix D. The discourse structures generated were checked for correctness, and also whether the system had found the all the critical and variable features.

The system is currently unable to generate meaningful descriptions for constructs in which the syntax does not contain enough information. For instance, the `let-form` is defined in INTEND as given below:

```
let-form := '( 'LET ' ( { let-binding + } ' )
              expression + ' ) ;
```

In this case, there is no further information that the variables defined in the `let-binding` should appear in the `expression`. Consequently, the system generates a description that does not reflect user expectations. Similarly, the `loop` statement is defined as:

```
loop-form := '( 'LOOP { loop-with }
                  { loop-initially }
                  { iteration-driving-clause + }
                  { loop-condition-clause + }
                  { loop-action-form }
                  { loop-finally } ' ) ;
```

However, the relationship between each of the components of a loop are not specified, and the system is unable to generate useful explanations about it. This illustrates one of the major shortcomings of this implementation: it does not, as yet, represent any semantic information about the various constructs in the domain. This results in an inability to generate descriptions at present that are either 'use' oriented, and so depend upon the underlying semantics, as seen in intermediate texts, or in generating even purely syntactic descriptions in which different parts of the syntactic specification interact with each other in ways that are not captured by the BNF. These and other limitations of our current implementation are discussed further in Section 10.2. If this system is to be scaled up, the semantics of the constructs must be represented as well.

In the following chapters, we illustrate the working of the system by generating descriptions about LISP as well as INTEND about some constructs for which the system can generate useful descriptions.

---

<sup>9</sup>The system can generate explanations for a much larger percentage of the INTEND grammar, since many of the productions in the grammar are very similar -- such as simple disjunctions, or a syntactic specification.

## Chapter 6

### Generating Integrated Natural Language Descriptions

*An example is always more efficacious than precept.*

*-- Samuel Johnson*

The previous chapter described the text planner and example generator components of the system. In this section, we illustrate the working of the system by tracing through the generation of three descriptions for the same concept, a `list` in LISP. The descriptions are in the text-only mode, examples-only mode, and both text and examples. This will clarify many of the issues that were presented earlier.

We have already discussed the representation of a `list` as a concept in LOOM (Figure 5.9). Using this representation of a `list`, we present three scenarios in which the system generates presentations that consist of only text, only examples, and finally, both text and examples. The target text type is introductory, so examples are generated wherever possible, usually interspersed within the description. This will illustrate the integration between text and examples.

#### 6.1 A Purely Textual Description of a LIST

To generate a description for the concept `list`, the system starts with an initial top level goal of `(BEL HEARER (CONCEPT LIST))`.<sup>1</sup> Two of the plan operators in the plan library that match this goal (i.e., their `EFFECT` slot is specified as `(BEL HEARER (CONCEPT ?OBJECT))` and the variable `?object` can be bound to `list`) are shown in Figure 6.1.

Both the plan operators in Figure 6.1 can be used by the system to describe objects: the first plan operator is used to generate descriptions that have some textual explanation, with or without examples; the second plan operator is used to generate descriptions that have only examples. The first plan operator checks whether the object is a term in the grammar, and then finds the appropriate text type<sup>2</sup> to use for the object. This is done using a simple user model, which contains the objects the user is familiar with. If the object being described appears in the user model, the system selects the advanced text type, otherwise, the system generates an introductory text. In our current scenario,

---

<sup>1</sup>In our initial implementation, the goal form contained the term `NOUW`, which in the DIM model (Engelmann and Carnine, 1982), represents a multi-featured basic form.

<sup>2</sup>In this implementation, we have not considered the generation of intermediate texts.

---

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :EFFECT (bel hearer (concept ?object))
  :CONSTRAINTS (and
    (isa? ?object grammar-object)
    (get-text-type-for-object ?text-type ?object)
    (get-appropriate-ftrs-for-user ?ftrs ?object ?text-type)
    (not *use-examples-only*))
  :NUCLEUS (bel hearer (ftrs-list ?ftrs ?object))
  :SATELLITES (((foreach ?ftrs (elaboration ?ftrs ?object)) *optional*)))

```

---

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :EFFECT (bel hearer (concept ?object))
  :CONSTRAINTS (and
    (isa? ?object grammar-object)
    (get-text-type-for-object ?text-type ?object)
    (get-appropriate-ftrs-for-user ?ftrs ?object ?user-type)
    (select-critical-ftrs ?crit-ftrs ?ftrs ?object)
    (enumerate-ftrs ?ex-crit-ftrs ?crit-ftrs ?object)
    (order-by-complexity ?eg-crit-ftrs ?ex-crit-ftrs)
    (select-variable-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?ftrs ?object)
    (enumerate-ftrs ?ex-var-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?object)
    (order-by-complexity ?eg-var-ftrs ?ex-var-ftrs)
    *use-examples-only*)
  :NUCLEUS (((foreach ?eg-var-ftrs (bel hearer (example-seq ?eg-var-ftrs ?object)))
    (foreach ?eg-crit-ftrs (bel hearer (example-pair ?eg-crit-ftrs ?object)))))
  :SATELLITES (((background (present-eg-background ?object)) *optional*)))

```

Figure 6.1: Top level Plan Operators to describe Objects.

---

the user model contains only atom, and number. Thus, the system selects an introductory text type for generation. The constraints then cause the selection of appropriate features to be presented to the user. In this case, the text type cause surface, syntactic features to be selected for presentation. The plan operator also specifies that the object is to be described by first listing the features, and then elaborating upon each one of them.

The second plan operator is discarded by the system because the *\*use-examples-only\** constraint is not satisfied in the context. This plan operator is therefore inapplicable in the given situation.

The constraints in the plan operator selected bind the variable *?ftrs* to the syntactic features of a list. This is because the text type is specified as introductory (the differences between introductory and advanced text types will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter 8). The system posts appropriate goals for both the NUCLEUS and the SATELLITE:

### NUCLEUS:

```
(BEL HEARER
  (FTRS-LIST (left-parenthesis (kleene-closure data-elements)
                                right-parenthesis)
    list))
```

### SATELLITE:

```
(ELABORATE left-parenthesis list)
(ELABORATE (kleene-closure data-elements) list)
(ELABORATE right-parenthesis list)
```

The relation ELABORATE appears in each of the subgoals posted as a SATELLITE; as we mentioned earlier, the presence of appropriate coherence relations between the text spans allows for the insertion of appropriate cue phrases to ensure that the final text is coherent.

The planner looks for applicable plan operators for the first subgoal, the one posted by the NUCLEUS.<sup>3</sup> The system finds two plan operators that have applicable :EFFECT specifications: one of the plan operators is meant for listing a single feature, and the other one is meant for goals listing multiple features. Since there are three features to be listed in this case, the second plan operator is selected for this subgoal. This goal in turn, posts further subgoals that finally result in the posting of three primitive goals which mention each of the three features. Each of these subgoals is an INFORM ... goal, or a speech-act, which can be realized in English without further planning. These three subgoals are linked to each other through the SEQUENCE relation, which here indicates the ordering of the syntactic elements. The SEQUENCE relation causes the realization component to insert the cue phrase 'followed by' between the phrases generated by the primitive goals. The text plan generated so far appears in Figure 6.2.<sup>4</sup> At this point, the system can generate the following sentence, which mentions all the features of a list:

*A list consists of a left parenthesis, followed by zero or more data elements, followed by a right parenthesis.*

The system still needs to expand the goals which were posted as the SATELLITE goals of the original top-level goal:

### SATELLITE:

```
(ELABORATE left-parenthesis list)
(ELABORATE (kleene-closure data-elements) list)
(ELABORATE right-parenthesis list)
```

The system attempts each of these (optional) goals in turn. It fails to find further information in the domain model for the left-parenthesis and is therefore unable to expand on this feature. Since the satellite was marked \*optional\*, the system does not try to backtrack up to the parent node (which was to describe a list). The second SATELLITE goal is to elaborate upon the kleene closure of data-elements in a list. The system determines, based on the domain model, that data-elements of a list can be of different types: symbols, numbers, or lists. It therefore expands this goal by generating a speech act which is an INFORM goal about the kleene closure of symbols, numbers or lists. Since this is a primitive goal, it is not expanded further. The third satellite goal, to elaborate upon the right

<sup>3</sup>In most cases, the NUCLEUS subgoals are generated first, before the satellite subgoals; however, certain RST relations, such as BACKGROUND and PURPOSE specify that the SATELLITE text should be generated before the nucleus subgoal is expanded.

<sup>4</sup>The text plans shown here are simplified to show the communicative goals without the formal notation.

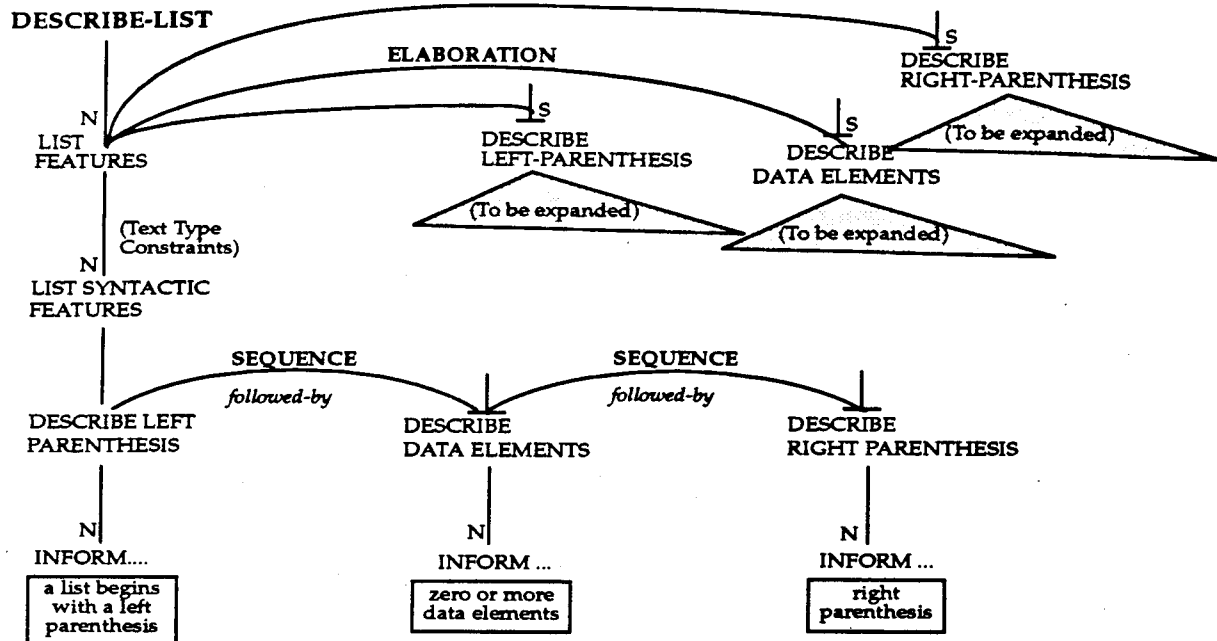


Figure 6.2: Plan skeleton for listing the main features of a list.

parenthesis also fails due to a lack of further domain knowledge. Thus, the top level satellite goals result in a speech act that represents the fact that data elements of a list can be Kleene closures of a set which contains symbols, numbers or other lists.

The resulting discourse structure is then processed by the grammar interface and the sentence generator. The resulting output, with appropriate connectives generated because of the coherence relations, is shown in Figure 6.3. The figure contains a screen snap shot of the system showing the complete text plan (with goals and plan operator names truncated after 20 characters), as well as the resulting description.

## 6.2 Communicating a Description of a LIST solely through Examples

The previous section showed the system generating a purely textual description of a list in LISP. An alternative description of a list can be one in which the system generates only examples, without any accompanying explanation.

Since the system must communicate all the features through examples only, the system must first categorize *each* feature as being either a *critical* feature, or a *variable* feature. This is necessary because critical and variable features are communicated using different strategies: critical features

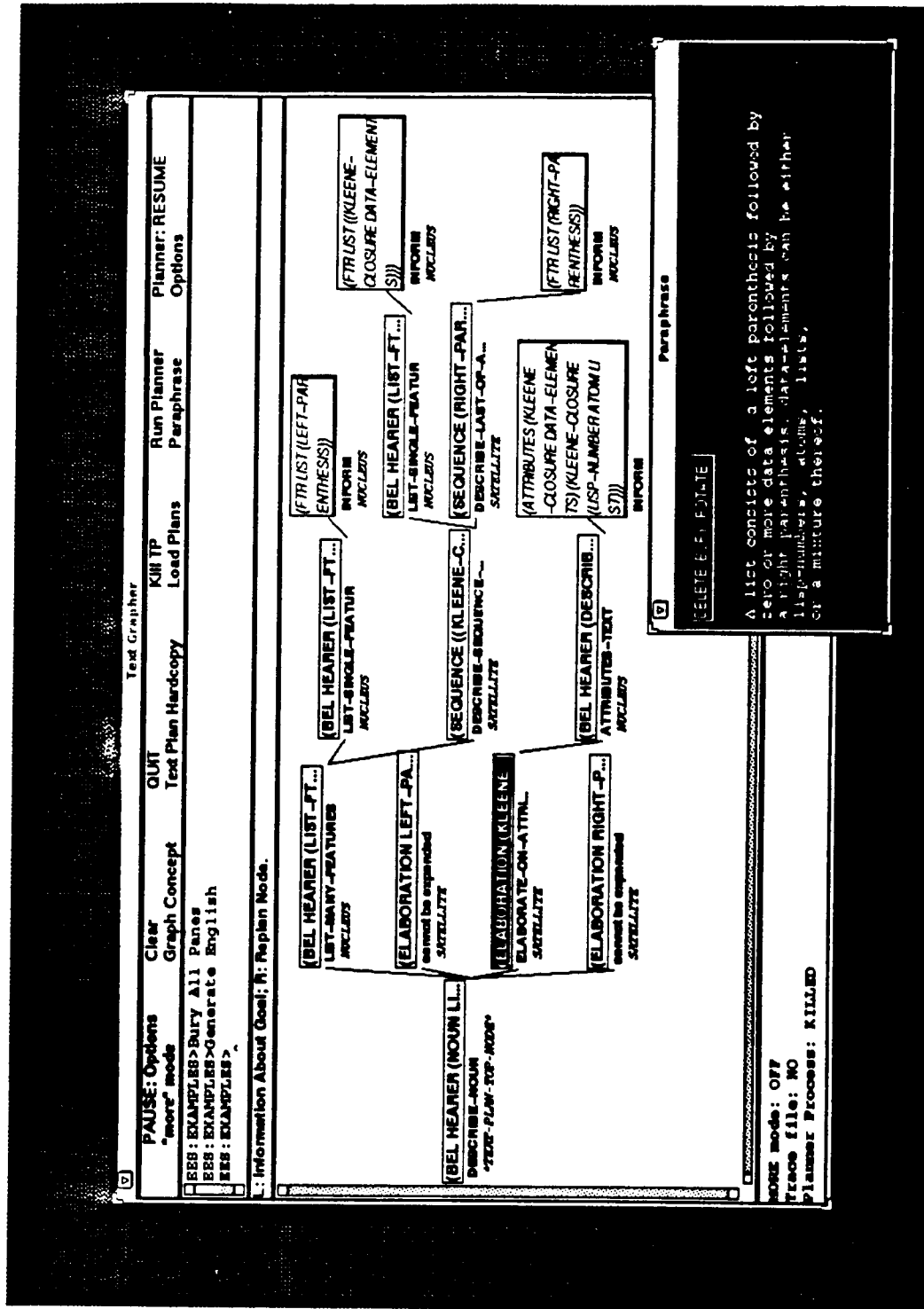


Figure 6.3: A purely textual description of a list.

through the pairing of minimally different<sup>5</sup> positive and negative examples, and variable features through the presentation of groups (at least 2) of widely differing positive examples.<sup>6</sup> The system must then also order these examples for presentation to the user.

In the case of a list, there are only three features that can be expressed through examples: the left parenthesis, the data elements and the right parenthesis. The system determines (using the algorithm given in Sections 5.3.2 and 5.3.3) that the left parenthesis and the right parenthesis are critical features, because the instances that the system created without these features did not classify as instances of a list, whereas modifying the data-elements in different instances did not cause the instances to not classify as a list.

The system must also determine the order in which examples illustrating different features are to be presented: it does this ordering within each group (critical features and variable features) using the algorithm presented in Section 5.3.5. Since both the left and the right parentheses are equally complex according to the algorithm, the system presents them without any particular ordering. Since data-elements is a non-terminal, the system first determines its sub-types (symbols, numbers and lists), finds the kleene closure (the power set of these 3 sub-types) and orders them in increasing complexity (again, using the algorithm in Section 5.3.5). The system must also ensure during the presentation of the variable features that it generates examples with varying number of elements in them.

Finally, the system determines whether the number of examples required to communicate the critical features is more than the number of examples required to communicate the variable features. Since the variable features require more examples, the system presents examples illustrating the critical features before the variable features. This can be seen in the constraints of the plan operator in Figure 6.4.<sup>7</sup> The plan operator posts a goal to present a pair of examples for each critical feature, and a set of examples for the variable features.

It may seem that because critical features are important in the examples that the critical features should be presented first, before the variable features. While most of the texts in the corpus do display this phenomenon (critical features being presented first), we believe that the ordering of the features is actually caused by the fact that the number of examples necessary to illustrate the critical features in most cases are less than the number of examples necessary to illustrate the variable features, and thus according to our complexity heuristic, are presented first. It is also sometimes not possible to present critical features first, because the presence of significant negative examples could cause the generation of further explanation, which should be sequenced last. Since the positive and negative examples should be presented adjacent to each other in the presentation sequence, that critical feature then gets presented last.

Since the examples are presented on their own, with no accompanying description, the system must also present prompts with the examples. The prompts should, at the very least, identify the examples as being either positive or negative. In this case, if more than one feature is being illustrated, the system generates prompts which contain information about the types of data elements in the list. The resulting text plan, and description are shown in Figures 6.5 and 6.6. The first four examples in the output are due to the critical features. The remaining examples are due to the variable features: a list of atoms, a list of numbers, a list of atoms and numbers, a list of a list, etc. The system did not present negative examples of atoms (by stripping the parentheses) because as we stated earlier, the system only attempts to determine critical and variable features by modifying the original definition one feature at a time.

---

<sup>5</sup>The difference is in the presence and absence of the critical feature.

<sup>6</sup>The examples are identical except in the varying feature, which is widely varied.

<sup>7</sup>The system actually posts goals in reverse order, i.e., if there are two goals in the NUCLEUS, the system will first post the goal that appears second in the NUCLEUS. Thus, the actual plan operator in the system has the goals in the NUCLEUS reversed; however, for clarity, we have presented the goals here in the more conventional order.

---

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :EFFECT (BEL HEARER (NOUN ?OBJECT))
  :CONSTRAINTS
    (and (isa? ?object concept)
         (get-user-type-for-object ?user-type ?object)
         (get-appropriate-ftrs-for-user ?ftrs ?object ?user-type)
         (select-critical-ftrs ?crit-ftrs ?ftrs ?object)
         (enumerate-ftrs ?ex-crit-ftrs ?crit-ftrs ?object)
         (order-by-complexity ?eg-crit-ftrs ?ex-crit-ftrs)
         (select-variable-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?ftrs ?object)
         (enumerate-ftrs ?ex-var-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?object)
         (order-by-complexity ?eg-var-ftrs ?ex-var-ftrs)
         (complexity-greater ?eg-crit-ftrs ?eg-var-ftrs)
         *USE-EXAMPLES-ONLY*)
  :NUCLEUS ((FOREACH ?EG-CRIT-FTRS
                    (bel hearer (example-pair ?eg-crit-ftrs ?object)))
            (FOREACH ?EG-VAR-FTRS
                    (bel hearer (example-seq ?eg-var-ftrs ?object)))))
  :SATELLITES (((BACKGROUND
                  (eg-background ?object)) *optional*)))

```

Figure 6.4: Plan Operator to generate example-only descriptions.

---

## 6.3 Generating an Integrated Description of a LIST

Let us now see how the system generates an integrated description containing both text and examples. The system initially begins (as in the previous two cases) with the top-level goal being given as (BEL HEARER (CONCEPT LIST)). The text planner searches for applicable plan operators in its plan library, and it picks one based on the EFFECT statement and the applicable constraints. The plan operator selected is the same plan operator initially selected when the system generated a purely textual description of a list. The text type causes the syntactic features of the list to be selected for presentation, as in Section 6.1. The main features of list are retrieved, and two subgoals are posted: one to list all the features (the left parenthesis, the data elements and the right parenthesis), and another to elaborate upon them.

At this point, the discourse tree has only three nodes: the initial node of (BEL HEARER (CONCEPT LIST)),<sup>8</sup> and its two children nodes, namely LIST-FEATURES and DESCRIBE-FEATURES, linked by a coherence relation, ELABORATE.

The text-planner now has these one NUCLEUS and three SATELLITE goals to expand:

---

<sup>8</sup>For the sake of clarity, we shall refer to such goals as (DESCRIBE-... ).



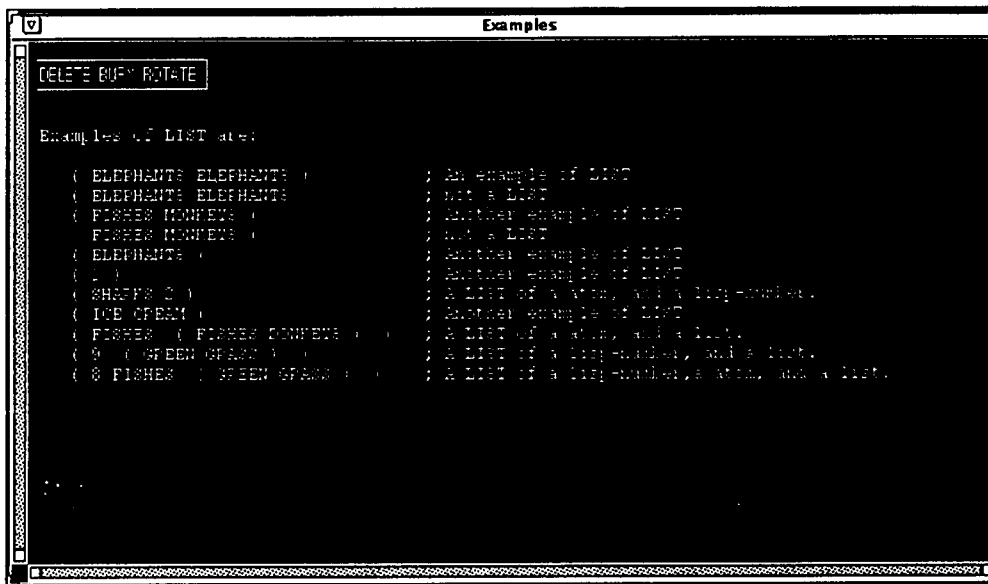


Figure 6.6: Output generated in the examples-only mode of a list description.

```
(LIST-MAIN-FEATURES
  LIST (LEFT-PARENTHESIS (KLEENE-CLOSURE DATA-ELEMENT)
    RIGHT-PARENTHESIS))

(DESCRIBE-FEATURE LEFT-PARENTHESIS LIST)
(DESCRIBE-FEATURE (KLEENE-CLOSURE DATA-ELEMENT) LIST)
(DESCRIBE-FEATURE RIGHT-PARENTHESIS LIST)
```

The planner searches for appropriate operators to satisfy the first of these goals. The operator to describe a list of features indicates that the features should be mentioned in a sequence. Three goals are appropriately posted at this point. These goals result in the planner generating a plan for describing the main features of a list: the left parenthesis, the data elements and the right parenthesis. At this point, the portion of the discourse tree that has been constructed is identical to the one that was constructed for the top level NUCLEUS goal in the 'purely textual' description that was presented in Section 6.1. The discourse tree contains the structure and information necessary to generate the first sentence of the description: "A list consists of a left parenthesis, zero or ...". A skeleton of the resulting text plan is shown in Figure 6.2.

The system needs to expand the three SATELLITE goals to describe each of the three components of a list. As in the previous case, described in Section 6.1, two of these SATELLITE goals, the ones to elaborate upon the left and the right parentheses, founder for lack of additional information. Being \*optional\*, the system continues without trying to backtrack up a level.

The system now attempts to satisfy the goal DESCRIBE-DATA-ELEMENTS by finding an appropriate plan. Data elements can be of three types: numbers, symbols, or lists. The system can either communicate this information by realizing an appropriate sentence, or through examples (or both). The system is

now no longer constrained to generate purely textual descriptions, as in Section 6.1. Since the text is an introductory one, and the definition of a list has already been presented, heuristics in the system cause it to select examples for presentation. The introductory text type specifies that if a concept definition has been presented, elaborations are preferably realized in the form of examples immediately following the definition. The system therefore attempts to generate examples of a list which illustrate these different types of data elements. Since data elements can vary in two dimensions, it generates two goals, one for each dimension: the number of elements, and the type of different elements. The goal to illustrate the variable number of data elements causes the posting of two goals, one to generate an example with a single element, and one to generate an example with multiple (four) elements.

```
(GENERATE-EXAMPLE (VAR-FTR DATA-ELEMENT) 1 LIST)
```

```
(GENERATE-EXAMPLE (VAR-FTR DATA-ELEMENT) 4 LIST)
```

Note that the system picks the numbers 1 and 4 for the following reasons: the system needs to pick an example at the lower end of the range of possible numbers, and selects zero, but a list with no elements is defined as the symbol `NIL` as well. Since the symbol `NIL` classifies as an anomalous example, and this is an introductory text, the system chooses 'one' as the number of elements to present. At the other end of the range, 'four' is specified in the system as the higher limit. Both of these goals causes other goals to be posted to actually construct the example. The example generation algorithm ensures that (i) the examples selected for related sub-goals (such as the two above) differ in *only* the dimension being highlighted; (ii) the remaining dimensions are kept as simple as possible: thus the examples generated contain only atoms. (Both numbers and atoms are considered to be equally complex in this implementation, and numbers could also have been chosen to construct the three simpler lists; however, the implementation in LOOM returns the first of the retrieved list, and this happens in this case to be atoms.) The resulting output of these two goals is the presentation of two lists of atoms, one with a single element, and another with four elements.

Similarly, the goal to illustrate the type variability of elements in a list causes the generation of multiple goals: a goal to illustrate the fact that data elements can be atoms, numbers, number+atoms, lists, numbers+lists, etc. The fact that there exists a kleene-closure of the data-elements causes the system to generate a power-set of all the sub-types. These are then sorted in order of increasing complexity, using the top-level function `ORDER-BY-COMPLEXITY`. As mentioned previously, this function is based on the complexity algorithm described in Section 5.3.5. The first four goals to present examples are selected. This is based on Clark's maxim of four examples (Clark, 1971). These four goals are:

```
(GENERATE-EXAMPLE (VAR-FTR ATOM) LIST)
```

```
(GENERATE-EXAMPLE (VAR-FTR NUMBER) LIST)
```

```
(GENERATE-EXAMPLE (VAR-FTR (ATOM NUMBER)) LIST)
```

```
(GENERATE-EXAMPLE (VAR-FTR LIST)) LIST)
```

The first three goals are further expanded by posting appropriate goals to construct and present appropriate examples. However, in the fourth case, the text type prevents the system from simply generating an example of a list which has other lists as its data elements. This is because in introductory cases, the system cannot simply present examples of either recursive or anomalous cases without explicitly marking them as such: this is done through the presentation of information explaining such concepts to the user. The system therefore posts two goals, one to provide background information (which presents three simple lists), and the other to build a list from these three lists. The system needs to present three simple lists (three is chosen as a number 'midway' between 1 and 4 the two limits in our system): these lists need to be simple, and therefore the previously presented lists which varied in their number of elements as well as their type, are not selected for re-use. Presentations of recursive examples can either be annotated by prompts, or (as in this case), accompanied (usually prefaced) with additional textual explanations. In the case of introductory

texts, the system has the option of generating text (for advanced texts, however the system would be constrained from generating additional text, and would therefore generate prompts).

The resulting discourse structure is shown in Figure 6.7.<sup>9</sup> The discourse structure is processed by the sentence realizer to an intermediate form, which represents only the speech acts and the rhetorical relations between them. This is shown in Figure 6.9. The resulting english output is shown in Figure 6.10.

## 6.4 Discussion

In this chapter, we have presented traces of the system in three different operating modes so as to clarify the working of the system. These traces illustrate the integration between text and examples discussed earlier in this thesis. The generation of the integrated description illustrates:

- Examples can replace textual explanations. The sentence describing the different types of data elements possible is replaced by examples illustrating the different types. This results in the elision of text.
- Examples can cause additional text to be generated; when anomalous or exceptional examples are presented, background text is added to introduce them. For example, the recursive example of a list of lists is prefaced with additional information.

The description in this chapter also illustrated two issues mentioned previously; the ordering of features and examples by complexity, and the selection of certain parameters so as not to present anomalous examples with the other regular examples (the system chose 1 rather than 0 as the minimum number of elements in a list so as to avoid having to present the anomalous case of NIL.) In the next chapter, we discuss the generation of documentation for a more complex concept; this will help illustrate some other conditions in which additional textual explanations are necessary if examples are presented.

---

<sup>9</sup>A simplified version of the text plan with the communicative goals is shown in Figure 6.8.



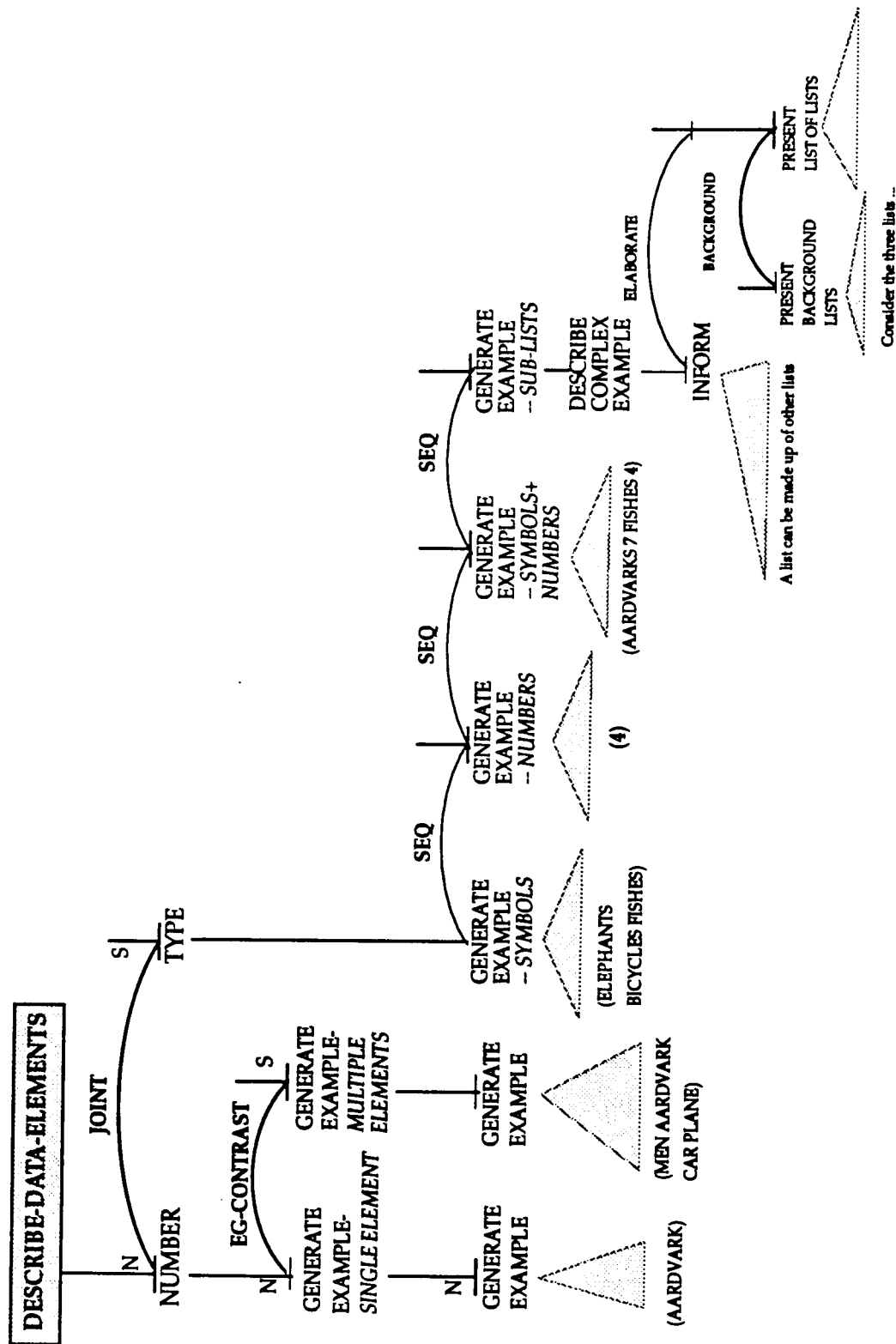


Figure 6.8: Skeletal text plan for elaborating on the data-elements.

---

```

(elaboration
 (sequence
  ((ftr list (left-parenthesis)))
  (sequence
   ((ftr list ((kleene-closure data-elements))))
   ((ftr list (right-parenthesis)))))
 (background
  ((for-eg))
  (((generate-eg-for-ftr
    (:var-ftr (kleene-closure data-elements) 1) list))
   (generate-eg-for-ftr
    (:var-ftr (kleene-closure data-elements) 4) list)))
  (((generate-eg-for-ftr (atom) list))
   (generate-eg-for-ftr (lisp-number) list))
   (generate-eg-for-ftr (atom lisp-number) list))
  (background
   ((recursive-case (list) list))
   (background
    ((simple-egs
      (" ( oranges oranges ) "
       " ( aardvarks elephants ) "
       " ( fishes apples ) ") list))
    (complex-eg
     ((" ( oranges oranges ) "
      " ( aardvarks elephants ) "
      " ( fishes apples ) ") list))))))

```

Figure 6.9: Intermediate form used by the sentence realizer in generating the integrated description.

---

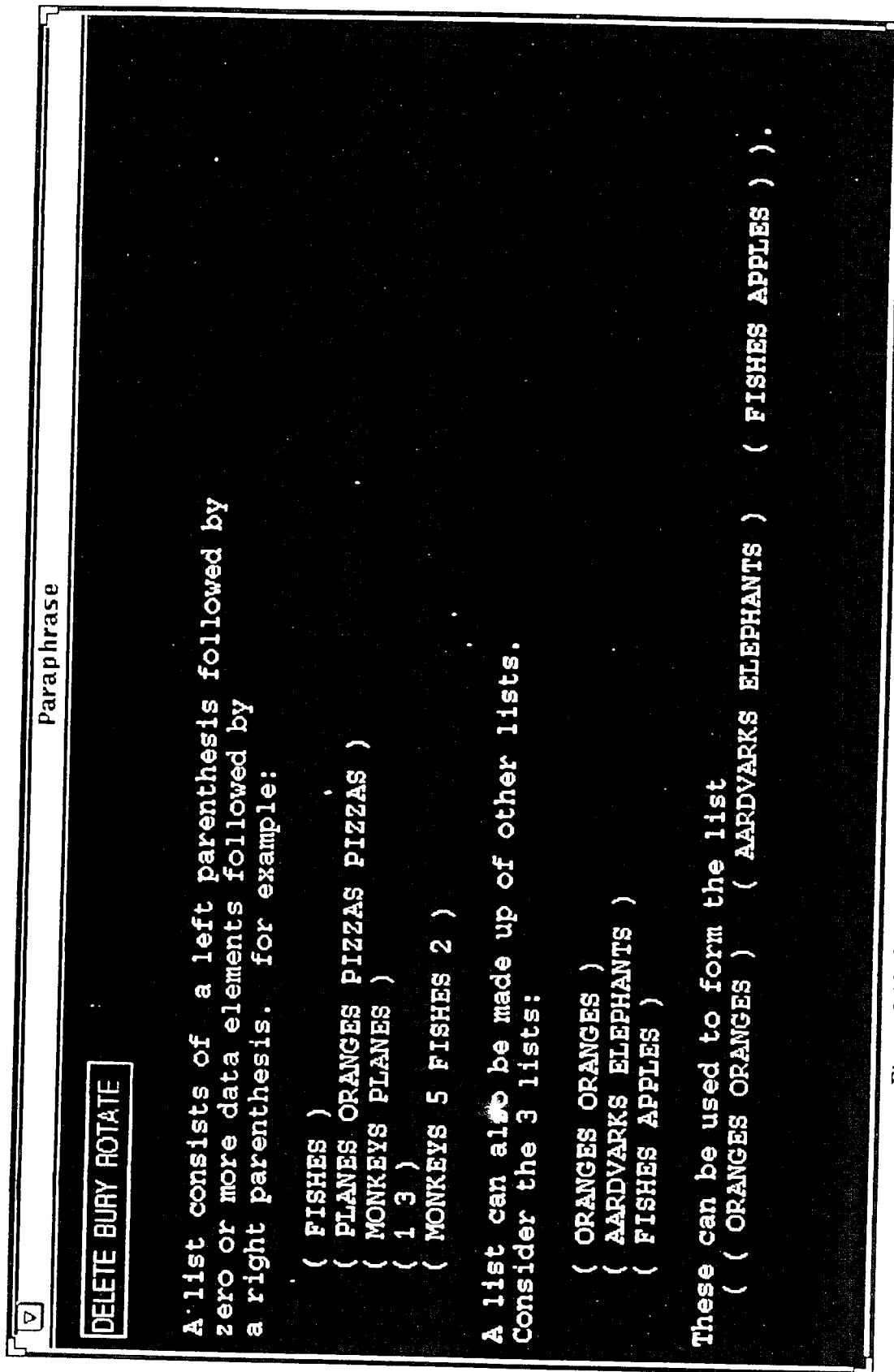


Figure 6.10: Output generated in the text-and-examples mode of a list's description.

## Chapter 7

### Negative Examples and their Effect on Explanations

*Technical Prose is almost immortal.*

*-- Frederick P. Brooks, Jr.  
'The Mythical Man-Month'*

The previous chapter presented three different modes in which our system can generate concept descriptions illustrating how the presentation of examples can cause the elision of some text from the descriptive explanation, and how the presence of difficult (either recursive or anomalous) examples can require additional text to be presented with the example. In this chapter, we discuss the presentation of negative examples and how they affect the surrounding text. As we have already mentioned (Section 3.6), negative examples are very useful in helping to convey the critical features of the concept. In this chapter, we illustrate how the system handles the issue of negative examples by generating documentation for concepts from the INTEND grammar (used in EES).

#### 7.1 A Documentation Example from INTEND

The INTEND grammar used in EES is large and complex, with 125 productions, 21 filter functions and 91 terminal symbols. Many of these productions are seemingly identical. This is because while the BNF specifications of the syntax are the same, the filter functions test for different properties. For instance, consider the grammar productions for a `predicate-relation-form` and a `function-form` shown in Figure 7.1. Thus, with a grammar such as INTEND, it is important that the documentation generated for a concept take into account other concepts that are very similar to the one being described, and contrast them for the reader. Productions such as these, represent patterns which can be very effectively contrasted by using examples (Polya, 1973). The introduction of contrasting examples can result in the generation of additional explanation. We will illustrate this aspect of the tight interaction between text and examples in this chapter.

An explanation generated by the system for the grammar symbol `predicate-form`, whose BNF definition is shown in Figure 7.1, is shown in Figure 7.2. Consider the examples and the textual explanation generated by the system. There are four examples presented in the explanation, three of which are positive, and the fourth is negative. The negative example serves to highlight the differences between two closely related forms: a `predicate-relation-form` and a `function-form`. Since the problem solving domain in question happened to be that of local area networks, all of the examples

---

```

if-form := '( 'IF predicate-form 'THEN expression
           { 'ELSE expression } ' ) ;

restricted-expression := var-name | concept-desc |
                          function-form | predicate-form ;

predicate-form := pred-relation-form |
                  pred-logical-form | pred-action-form ;



pred-relation-form :=


    '( relation-name restricted-expression + ' )
    |> pred-relation-form-test ;

pred-action-form := action-form    |> pred-action-test ;

pred-logical-form :=
    '( 'AND predicate-form + ' ) |
    '( 'OR  predicate-form + ' ) | '( 'NOT predicate-form ' ) ;



function-form :=


    '( relation-name restricted-expression + ' )
    |> function-relation-form-test ;

```

Figure 7.1: A fragment of the grammar for the INTEND plan language in EES.

---

A predicate-form is a restricted-expression. It returns a boolean value, and the number of arguments in a predicate-form is equal to the arity of the relation. A predicate-form can be of three types: a predicate-relation-form, a predicate-action-form, or a predicate-logical-form.

A predicate-relation-form consists of a relation-name followed by some arguments. The arguments are restricted-expressions, such as variables, concepts, function-forms and predicate-forms. Examples of predicate-relation-forms are:

```

(INDICATOR-STATE LED-1      ON)
(HARDWARE-STATUS LANBRIDGE-2 FAULTY)
(CONNECTED-TO   DECSERVER-1 VAX-A)

```

However, the following example is not a predicate-relation-form, but a function-form, because the number of arguments is not equal to the arity of the relation:

```

(CONNECTED-TO DECSERVER-1)

```

The difference between a function-form and a predicate-relation-form is that the function-form takes one less argument than the arity of the relation, and returns the range of the relation, while the predicate-logical-form takes as many arguments as the arity and returns a boolean value.

A predicate-action-form is ...

Figure 7.2: The documentation for 'predicate-form'.

---

that the system constructed are from that domain. As in the scenario presented in Section 6.3, the interaction of the text and the examples can be seen in various places:

1. the examples illustrate features mentioned in the text, namely the syntax of the `predicate-relation-form`
2. to make sure the first three examples are understood as positive examples, the system generates appropriate background text to introduce the examples: "Examples of predicate-relation-forms are ..."
3. the sentence "However, the following is not a (positive example) ..." is generated to explicitly highlight the contrast between positive and negative examples
4. the negative example selected causes the generation of additional text both *before* and *after* the presentation of the example. This is because the example is not just *not* a `predicate-relation-form`, but it is also a `function-form`, a different, but similar construct which can be contrasted with the `predicate-relation-form`. Additional text is generated first to introduce the negative example as a contrast to the positive ones, and later to explain the differences between the two similar constructs.

This scenario also illustrates the other aspects that have to be taken into consideration when generating integrated text and examples:

- *Fixed Features:* As previously mentioned in Section 3.6, it is important for the system to differentiate between *variable features* and *critical features* because of the differences in the way examples are presented to illustrate them. It is also useful for the system to represent and reason about *fixed features*. Fixed features are critical features representing terminal symbols that are specified as being known to the user.<sup>1</sup> For instance, terminal symbols such as the keywords 'defun' and 'defmacro' in the LISP domain may be specified as fixed features once the system has presented definitions and examples of functions and macros to the user. After these keywords (which are critical features in the examples) have been annotated in the system as being 'fixed', the system will

- not explicitly mention these features in its textual explanation when explaining either the same concept or its sub-concepts;
- not generate negative examples for these features.

For instance, if the system is generating examples of functions to calculate, for instance, the factorial of a number, the system will not generate negative examples of functions that do not have the keyword 'defun;' instead the negative examples would be concerned with other aspects of the functional specification. Fixed features are dependent upon the context (what has been presented earlier, or what is represented in the user model), and are used to prevent the system from generating overly verbose explanations. In this scenario, the fact that a `predicate-relation-form` must begin and end with a parenthesis is considered by the system an instance of a fixed feature. Thus, the parentheses are not mentioned in the accompanying explanation, nor does the system generate negative examples with missing parentheses.

Variable features are those which can vary within a certain range in a positive example -- in this case, the `relation-name` is a variable feature. It is usually necessary to provide several examples to communicate the variable nature of the feature (Clark, 1971). In this case, several different relation-names are used in an attempt to ensure that the user realizes its variable nature.

Critical features are features which, if modified, cause the example to change from positive to negative. Critical features in this case are the number of arguments that follow the `relation-name`; there must be exactly as many arguments as the arity of the relation.

---

<sup>1</sup>This also satisfies Grice's Second Maxim of being concise by omitting facts that are already known to the user.

- *Presentation Order:* The presentation order of the examples depends upon the complexity of the features they illustrate; the ordering is also important to communicate the *critical features* of a concept (as discussed in Section 3.6). In this case, the variable features and the critical features both require two examples; since the negative example of the second pair is an 'interesting' negative example (resulting in more explanations), the examples illustrating the variable feature are presented before the second pair.
- *Additional Explanation:* text to draw attention to specific points in the examples might be needed to render explicit the implicit information that may otherwise be overlooked. In this case, the need to introduce the positive and negative examples is quite clear; however, the information on the negative example being a *function-form* could have been easily overlooked.

This scenario illustrates again the close relationship between text and examples. The next section describes how our generation system can generate such explanations.

## 7.2 Plan Operators

Two of the plan operators used in this example are shown in Figure 7.3.<sup>2</sup> As mentioned earlier, the constraints of the plan operators indicate how the text and the examples co-constrain each other.

The first plan operator can be used to describe a concept and one of its role restrictions, e.g., it could be used to describe the fact that a *predicate-form* is constrained to return a *BOOLEAN* value. The first constraint finds the type of the role restriction on the concept (whether its a value restriction -- as in the case of the *BOOLEAN*, or whether its a number restriction, etc.). This is necessary because the eventual phrasing depends upon this information. The second constraint finds all the features pertaining to this role and the concept that need to be presented, taking into account the user model and the previous discourse. The next constraint determines which of these features can be presented in the form of examples: this is dependent upon both the features themselves -- syntactic features can be expressed through examples, but not structural features -- as well as the explanation context -- whether for instance, the appropriate definition has already been presented. The last constraint filters out the fixed features that the planner should not present in text. At this point, the operator can be selected, since all of its constraints have been satisfied. It therefore posts two sub-goals: one to present a textual explanation of the role restriction on the concept, and another, optional sub-goal, to present examples of the concept that illustrate the role restriction.

The second plan operator can be used to present a contrasting pair of positive-negative examples. The first constraint finds a positive example for the concept illustrating the role. The second constraint finds a negative example by using the same information, as well as the positive example constructed as a result of the previous constraint being satisfied. The third constraint checks to see whether the negative example constructed is an interesting one or not. If all of these constraints are satisfied, the planner can apply this operator. This results in the planner posting three sub-goals: one to present the positive example and two for the negative example. The two sub-goals for the negative example result in the background text ("However, this is not a ... ") and the actual example and the differences.

<sup>2</sup>The plan operators shown here have been simplified somewhat; for instance, the constraints that take into account the text type have been removed from these two operators for the sake of brevity.

---

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :EFFECT (BEL HEARER (ref (defining-attributes ?concept) ?role))
  :CONSTRAINTS
    (and
      (get-restriction-type ?restriction-type ?role ?concept)
      (get-features ?features ?role ?concept *user-model*
                    *explanation-context*)
      (get-features-for-eg ?features-only-in-eg ?features ?role
                          ?concept *user-model* *explanation-context*)
      (filter-fixed-fters ?features-in-text ?features
                          ?features-only-in-eg *user-model* *explanation-context*)))
  :NUCLEUS
    (INFORM S hearer (?restriction-type ?role ?features-in-text))
  :SATELLITES
    (((ELABORATION-BY-EXAMPLE ?features ?role ?concept) *optional*)))

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :EFFECT (EXAMPLE ?fters ?concept ?role))
  :CONSTRAINTS
    (and
      (get-pos-example ?pos-example ?fters ?concept ?role)
      (get-neg-example ?neg-example ?pos-example ?fters ?concept
                      ?role-restricted)
      (significant-negative-example? ?new-concept ?neg-example))
  :NUCLEUS
    (BEL HEARER (example ?pos-example ?fters ?concept ?role))
  :SATELLITES
    (((BACKGROUND (neg-example ?neg-example ?concept ?role)
                  *optional*)
      ((EVIDENCE (counter-example ?neg-example ?fters ?new-concept
                                ?role)) *optional*)))

```

Figure 7.3: Text Plan operators used in in presenting Examples.

---

## 7.3 Generating the Documentation on Predicate-Relation-Form

The system initially begins with the top-level goal of (BEL HEARER (CONCEPT PREDICATE-FORM)). The text planner searches for applicable plan operators in its plan-library, and, finding an applicable plan operator,<sup>3</sup> it posts two subgoals: one to give a definition of the concept (predicate-form), and another (optional one) to elaborate upon this definition. (This is the same plan operator that was utilized by the planner for generating the descriptions of a list in Sections 6.1 and 6.3.) At this point then, the planner has two goals:<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup>There are several plans available in the plan library for describing objects. The system chooses one using *selection heuristics* designed by Moore (Moore, 1989).

<sup>4</sup>As in the previous chapter, we shall not use the formal notation in presenting goals for the sake of clarity.

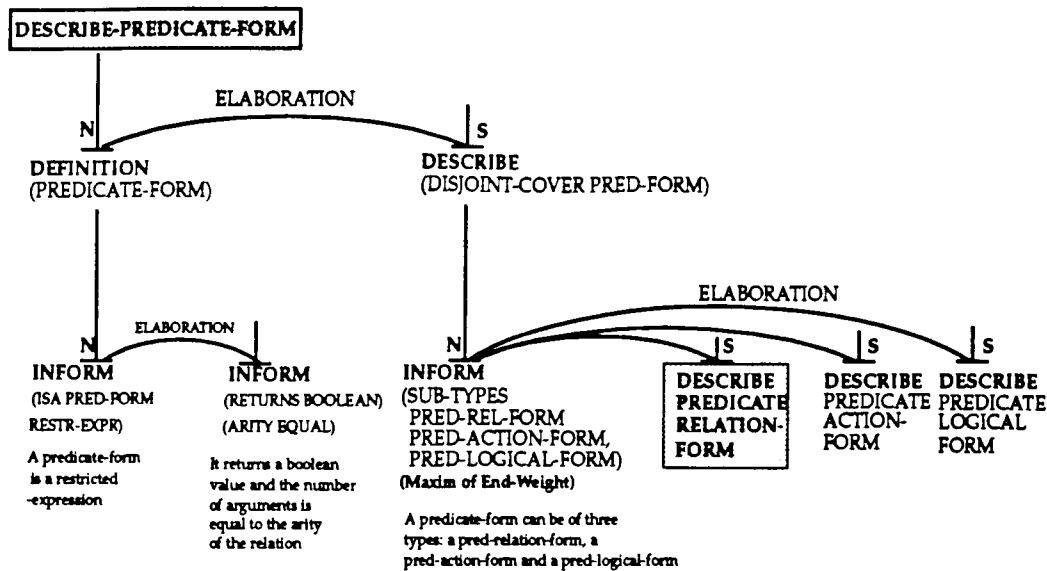


Figure 7.4: A skeletal fragment of the text plan generated for the initial text.

```
(DESCRIBE (CONCEPT PREDICATE-FORM))
(ELABORATE PREDICATE-FORM)
```

The planner expands the first subgoal by providing a definition of the concept *predicate-form*. There are a number of different ways in which a concept definition can be provided. For instance, a concept can be defined in terms of its parent with their differentiating attributes clearly specified. Another way would be to present its syntactic or structural description, as was done in the case of the *list*. Yet another way is to describe the concept in terms of its disjoint coverings (such as describing 'humans' as being either 'male' or 'female'). Which of these methods is used to describe the concept depends upon the concept: for instance, in the case of *list*, the parent concept of the *list* was *grammar-symbol*. Since a *grammar-symbol* is any symbol in the grammar, the system did not describe a *list* as being a *grammar-symbol*. In the case of a *predicate-form*, the system does not have the option of presenting the syntactic definition, because it does not have a syntactic definition. The system could present a description of the *predicate-form* in terms of its sub-types, but the selection heuristics pick the first method (describing it in terms of its parent) over the third method (in terms of its children). This results in the first two sentences of the explanation:

A *predicate-form* is a *restricted-expression*. It returns a boolean value and the number of arguments is equal to the arity of the relation.

The SATELLITE goal to elaborate upon a *predicate-form* is now expanded by the planner. The only information that the system has about the *predicate-form* that has not been expressed, is that *predicate-forms* can be of three types: *predicate-relation-forms*, *predicate-action-forms*, and *predicate-logical-forms*. The planner expands the satellite goal by posting two goals: one to present this information about the three sub-types, and another to describe each of the three sub-types. The NUCLEUS sub-goal is a primitive goal which results in the generation of the third sentence in the documentation:

A predicate-form can be one of three types: a predicate-relation-form, a predicate-action-form, or a predicate-logical-form.

The goals to elaborate upon each sub-type of a predicate-form will be expanded in turn. Because these sub-types might be of differing complexity, and it is important to present the information from the simplest one to the most complex one<sup>5</sup> The resulting ordering is: predicate-relation-form followed by predicate-action-form followed by predicate-logical-form. Each elaboration results in posting the goal of describing a sub-type. So the three sub-goals are posted in turn.

```
(ELABORATE (CONCEPT-DESCRIPTION PREDICATE-RELATION-FORM)
(ELABORATE (CONCEPT-DESCRIPTION PREDICATE-ACTION-FORM))
(ELABORATE (CONCEPT-DESCRIPTION PREDICATE-LOGICAL-FORM))
```

This portion of the planning process is recorded in the skeleton text-plan shown in Figure 7.4. This text plan shows the communicative goals that have been posted as well as the coherence relations between them.

The first goal that the planner expands is the one to describe the concept predicate-relation-form. As in the case of predicate-form, the system has a number of options to describe it. The first option, which is to describe it in terms of its parent concept -- a predicate-form -- is not chosen because the concept-parent relationship between a predicate-relation-form and a predicate-form has already been mentioned (the predicate-relation-form was introduced as a sub-type of predicate-form). The second option of describing a concept in terms of its syntax is applicable in this case, because there is a syntactic definition associated with the concept. The third option of describing the concept in terms of its sub-types is not applicable in this case. Thus, the planner selects the plan operator that describes the syntax of the concept. In this case, the syntax is:

```
PREDICATE-RELATION-FORM := '( ( RELATION-NAME { ARGUMENT + } ) )
```

Instantiating the plan operator, the system has the option of describing the syntax in textual form, or through examples (since the text type is introductory, the system can present examples at any point). However, the system has not yet presented a definition of predicate-relation-form. In introductory texts examples can be presented only after the definition of the concept. The plan operator chosen by the system posts two sub-goals: one to present the definition (in text), and the other to elaborate upon predicate-relation-form through examples.

```
(PRESENT (CONCEPT-DEFINITION PREDICATE-RELATION-FORM))
(ELABORATE (CONCEPT-DEFINITION PREDICATE-RELATION-FORM))
```

Before the two sub-goals are posted, the constraints of the plan operator selected compute the parameters that determine what gets expressed via text, via examples and both. The plan operator in this case is very similar to the first plan operator in Figure 7.3. In the case of the predicate-relation-form, the system determines<sup>6</sup> that there are three critical features, i.e., the left parenthesis, the right parenthesis, and the number of arguments in the predicate-relation-form (which must be equal to the arity of the relation). There is only one variable feature: the relation-name (the arguments to the relation-name are constrained by the relation chosen, so they are not independently variable) The system also determines that the parentheses should not be mentioned in the text as they are fixed features, and will be mentioned in all the examples.

The system now has enough information to continue with the presentation planning process: the first sub-goal posted, to present the definition of the concept expands into two sub-goals:

<sup>5</sup>as mentioned in Section 3.6, one of the constraints in the plan operator selected explicitly orders the sub-types using the function ORDER-BY-COMPLEXITY, before posting the sub-goals to describe them in turn.

<sup>6</sup>As described in Section 5.3.2, the system determines critical features and variable features by modifying the definitions and seeing whether an example of the modified definition becomes a negative example of the concept, using the LOOM classifier.

(INFORM S HEARER (ISA RELATION-NAME PREDICATE-RELATION-FORM))  
(SEQUENCE (SYNTAX-FTRS ARGUMENTS PREDICATE-RELATION-FORM))

The first sub-goal results in "A *predicate-relation-form* consists of a *relation-name*". The coherence relation SEQUENCE between the two goals causes the generation of the cue phrase "followed by", and the second sub-goal results in "A *predicate-relation-form* has some *arguments*". When these two sub-goals, along with the coherence relation, are processed by the sentence generator, it results in:

A predicate-relation-form consists of a relation name followed by some arguments.

The sub-goal to describe the arguments also causes the posting of a goal to elaborate upon the fact that restricted-expressions can be of different types such as variables, concepts, and function-forms. This is realised by a primitive speech act as shown in Figure 7.5. Thus, the planner has generated the first four sentences at this point.

The planner now has to expand the goal of  
(ELABORATE (CONCEPT-DEFINITION PREDICATE-RELATION-FORM))

Since at this point the definition of a *predicate-relation-form* has already been presented, the system can present examples of a *predicate-relation-form* to satisfy this goal. As described in Section 5.3.2, the variable and critical features computed previously are retrieved. During the computation of the critical features, the system modifies the definition of the *predicate-relation-form* by reducing the number of arguments by one (as described in the algorithm in Section 5.3.2). An example generated for this modified definition classifies under the concept *function-form*. Since the system finds an interesting negative example, it orders the other examples so that the negative example is presented last (according to the ordering criteria given in Section 5.3.5). The system needs to present at least two examples to illustrate a variable feature. These two examples illustrating the variable feature (the *relation-name*) are to be presented first, followed by the pair for the critical features. The planner must also indicate that the examples are positive and negative as well. This is done through the posting of a BACKGROUND goal to generate text to introduce the positive examples. This is followed by a goal to generate the examples for the variable features, and the goal to generate examples for the critical feature. Since examples illustrating variable features should be widely different, the system generates examples with two different relations, and the first two examples are generated. This part of the text plan is shown in Figure 7.5.

In the case of the positive-negative pair to illustrate the critical feature, the positive example can be presented without any introduction because the immediately preceding examples are positive examples as well. To present the negative example, the system must generate additional introductory text to explicitly mark the example as being negative. The planner posts an appropriate goal to generate text to introduce the negative example. This is linked to the goal for presenting the positive example with the coherence relation CONTRAST. This results in the generation of a cue phrase such as "However, ...". The presentation of the negative example is accompanied by the presentation of a goal to elaborate upon the differences between a *predicate-relation-form* and a *function-form*. The relevant portions of the text-plan are shown in Figure 7.6.

The planner continues expanding goals in this fashion, until all the goals are primitive speech-acts, such as (INFORM ...). Finally, the completed discourse tree is passed to an interface which converts the INFORM goals into the appropriate input for the sentence generator. The interface constructs the individual sentences as well as connects them appropriately, using the rhetorical information from the discourse tree. For example, it chooses "However" to reflect the CONTRAST relation. It also chooses the appropriate lexical items. Finally the sentence generator produces the English. The resulting output is shown in Figures 7.7 and 7.8.

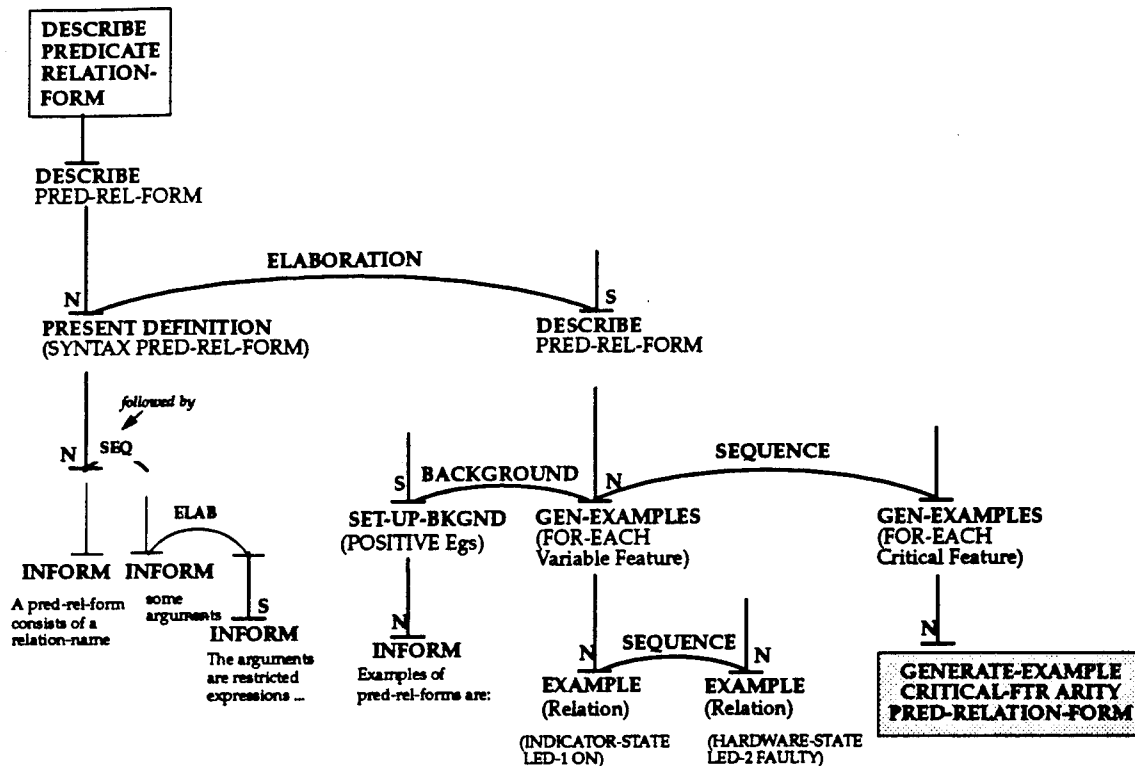


Figure 7.5: Plan fragment for the predicate-relation-form.

## 7.4 Discussion

In this chapter, we have seen additional ways in which both examples and text interact with and co-constrain each other. It is important to recognize and present interesting negative examples when they are available; however, such examples can cause additional text to be generated, as well as affect the order in which the examples are to be presented. It is important to recognize this interaction in order to provide an appropriate, well-structured and coherent presentation to the user. This chapter has reinforced the argument that example generation must be considered as an integral part of the generation process. Our scenario from the documentation system has illustrated some of these issues.

In the next chapter, we look at the effect of the text type on the generation process, and study the major differences between the descriptions that occur in introductory *vs.* advanced texts.

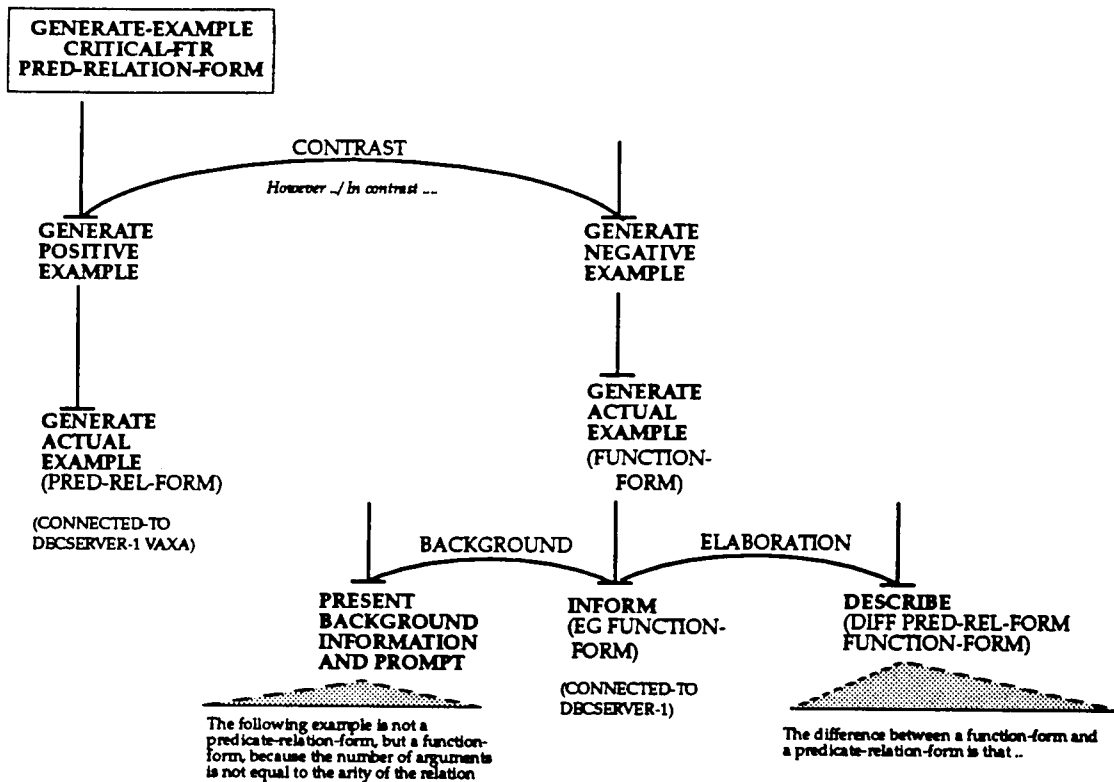


Figure 7.6: Text-plan fragment for the generation of the examples for the critical feature.

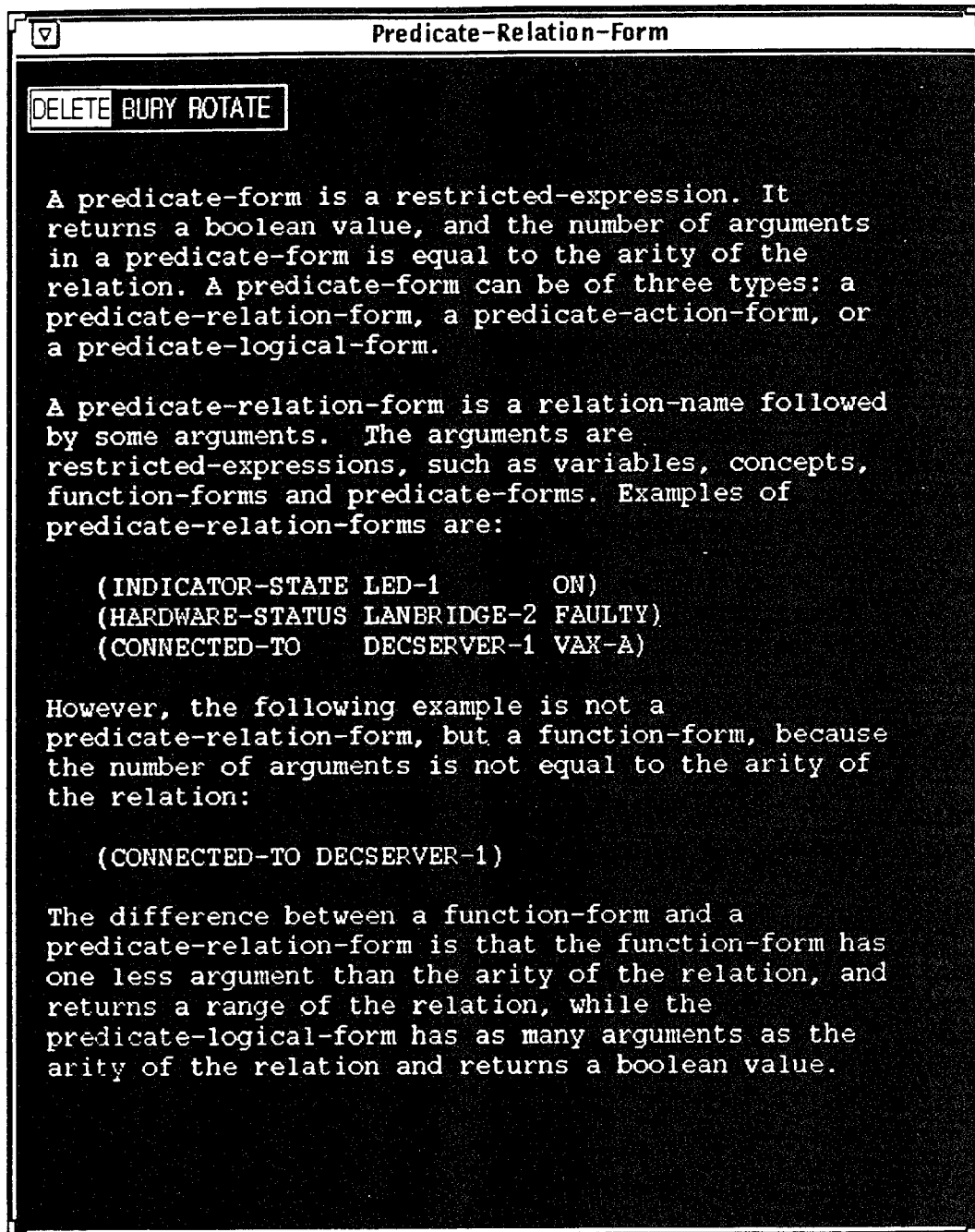
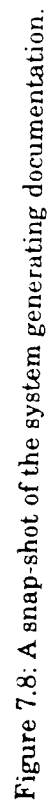


Figure 7.7: Documentation for predicate-relation-form with Examples.



## Chapter 8

### The Effect of the Text Type on Descriptions

The previous chapters discussed two instances of the interaction between the text and the examples: the elision of text due to the presentation of 'equivalent' examples, and the addition of text, due to the presence of anomalous, or negative examples. All of the previous descriptions have been generated for an introductory text type. Given another text type, the descriptions can be very different. It is important to generate appropriate descriptions in different situations. This chapter analyses the differences between introductory, intermediate, and advanced text types. While we shall discuss the main points of each of these three text types, it must be emphasized that our implementation as yet does not have a representation for the intermediate text type. Thus, our generation can only be done for the introductory and advanced text types. This is because we do not, as yet, represent the semantics of the various constructs, and these are essential in the generation of descriptions for intermediate texts. This chapter presents the main differences between these three types, describes how introductory and advanced texts affect the generation of concept descriptions. We have already seen the generation of a list for an introductory text; in this chapter, we shall trace the generation of a description for an advanced text to contrast the two processes and thus illustrate our points.

First we discuss the need to vary the descriptions. Then we describe what a text type is considered to be, and its implications for the text as well as the examples. We later deal with each of the effects, and describe how one of the differences noticed in our corpus -- the placement of the examples with respect to the text -- can be explained by using the text type. Finally, the rest of the chapter traces the generation of the advanced text scenario to show how these issues are considered in this implementation.

#### 8.1 The Need to Vary Descriptions

Different situations can result in widely varying descriptions. The variation can occur in both the textual descriptions and the accompanying examples. Contrast the two descriptions for the same concept -- a list -- given in Figures 8.1 and 8.2. Not only is the textual description different, the examples -- in terms of number, content, position, etc. -- are different as well. It is therefore essential to generate descriptions which take into account the situation. In this case, we are concerned with generating descriptions in different text types.

Researchers have studied the effect of different situations on the textual description: for example, Paris (1988) and Paris and Bateman (1989) studied the changes resulting in the text based on the intended user (a concept analogous to the text type). Polya (1945) and Michener (1978) presented characterizations of different example types. However, there has been no work on the characterization of descriptions that include examples in different text types.

---

A list always begins with a left parenthesis. Then come zero or more pieces of data (called the elements of a list) and a right parenthesis. Some examples of lists are:

```
(AARDVARK)
(RED YELLOW GREEN BLUE)
(2 3 5 11 19)
(3 FRENCH FRIES)
```

A list may contain other lists as elements. Given the three lists:

```
(BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH)
we can make a list by combining them all with a parentheses.
((BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH))
```

From (Touretzky, 1984), page 35.

Figure 8.1: A description of list in an introductory text.

---

A list is recursively defined to be either the empty list or a CONS whose CDR component is a list. The CAR components of the CONSES are called the elements of the list. For each element of the list, there is a CONS. The empty list has no elements at all.

A list is annotated by writing the elements of the list in order, separated by blank space (space, tab, or return character) and surrounded by parentheses. For example:

```
(a b c)           ; A list of 3 symbols
(2.0s0 (a 1) #\*) ; A list of 3 things: a
                  ; floating point number,
                  ; another list, and a
                  ; character object
```

From (Steele Jr., 1984), page 26.

Figure 8.2: A description of list from a reference manual.

---

One cannot independently plan a description tailored to a user, separately generate examples tailored to the user, and then present them together: Sweller *et al.* found that if the examples and the descriptive component were not integrated, the combination could result in reduced user comprehension (Chandler and Sweller, 1991; Ward and Sweller, 1990). Examples and text must be presented to the user as a coherent whole, and together, appropriately tailored to the situation. Yet, the issue of tailoring descriptions that include examples for the situation at hand has not been addressed.

## 8.2 The Notion of a Text Type

It has long been observed that certain types of linguistic phenomena such as the rhetorical structure, lexical types, grammatical features, etc. closely reflect the genre of the text, e.g., introductory tutorial material, reference manuals, etc. Several text typologies have been proposed by linguists. For instance, Biber (1989) identified eight basic types of texts based on statistically derived grammatical and lexical commonalities; the Washington School proposed a detailed classification of different genres of written scientific and technical English (Trimble, 1985), and de Beaugrande (1980) proposed

a general classification of text types, arguing that text types determine the types of discourse structure relations used.

A text generation system can make use of the notion of text types to constrain its options, such as which communicative goals to achieve, which discourse relations to favor, any appropriate grammatical constraints, etc. In our case, text types play a particularly important role in the generation of examples and their positioning. More specifically, for descriptions, two text types -- *introductory* and *advanced* -- constrain the positioning of examples with respect to the descriptive material. These are the two text types that we describe in this chapter and are used by the implemented system.

### 8.3 Integrating Examples: Issues Related to the Text Type

Many issues need to be considered when generating descriptions that integrate descriptive text and examples, because both these components co-constrain and affect each other. While we have discussed these issues in previous chapters, especially Chapter 3, we review some of them here:

- What should be in the text, in the examples, in both?
- What is a suitable example? How much information should a single example attempt to convey? Should there be more than one example?
- If multiple examples are to be presented, what is the order of presentation?
- If an example is to be given, should the example be presented immediately, or after the whole description is presented?<sup>1</sup>
- Should prompts be generated along with the examples?

Answers to these questions depend on whether the text is an introductory or advanced text. Consider, for example, the descriptions of `list` given in Figure 8.1 taken from (Touretzky, 1984), an introductory book, and Figure 8.2 taken from (Steele Jr., 1984), an advanced, reference book: they contain very different information in both their descriptive portions as well as their examples; while Figure 8.1 contains eight lists (which are used either as examples or as background to the examples), Figure 8.2 has only two lists as examples. The elements of the examples in the two descriptions are also significantly different: the numbers in Figure 8.1 are integers, such as 2 and 3, while the number used as an element in Figure 8.2 is a more complex instance: `2.0e0`. The examples in Figure 8.1 do not contain prompts, while those in Figure 8.2 do. Finally, the examples appear very differently placed (with respect to the explanation) in the two figures.

The next section discusses each of these issues in turn.

### 8.4 Introductory versus Advanced Texts

We now consider how descriptions that contain examples differ from introductory to advanced text. Note that this is one of the dimensions for example categorization that we described in Chapter 4. We shall address each of the questions presented in Section 8.3. The different components that can vary are:

---

<sup>1</sup>This will determine whether the example(s) appear *within*, *before*, or *after* the descriptive text.

- **The descriptive component:** in the case of the introductory texts, the descriptive component contains surface or syntactic information. This fact was found to be true in our entire corpus without exception; it was also noticed in other studies, e.g., (MacLachlan, 1986; Charney *et al.*, 1988; Reder *et al.*, 1986).

Reference material is technical, detailed and comprehensive. The material usually contains all the facts about the system (including the internal structure of the concept), forming the basis for all other types of documentation (Brockmann, 1986).

- **The actual examples:** examples in both text types illustrate critical features of the surface or syntactic form of the concept or its realization. In introductory texts, however, examples are simple and tend to illustrate only one feature at a time. (Sometimes it is not possible to isolate one feature, and an example might illustrate two features; in this case, the system will need to generate additional text -- such as a prompt -- to mention this fact.) On the other hand, examples in reference texts are multi-featured.
- **The number of examples:** since introductory texts contain usually single-featured examples, the number of examples depend upon the number of critical features that the concept possesses. In contrast, as reference texts contain examples that contain three or four features per example (Clark, 1971), proportionately fewer examples need to be presented.
- **The polarity of the examples:** introductory texts make use of both positive and negative examples, but not anomalous examples. Advanced texts on the other hand, contain positive and anomalous examples, but usually not negative ones.
- **The position of the examples:** in introductory texts, the examples are presented immediately after the point they illustrate is mentioned. This results in descriptions in which the examples are interspersed in the text. On the other hand, examples in reference texts must be presented only after the description of the concept is complete.
- **Prompts:** in general, prompts are generated when an example contains more than one feature. The system must also generate prompts in the case of recursive examples (these are examples that have as elements other examples of the concept), and anomalous examples if background text has not yet been generated. In introductory texts, background text is usually generated and thus prompts are not necessary. In contrast, in advanced texts, the examples are grouped at the end, after the textual description; background text cannot be generated at that point, so prompts may be necessary.

These observations are summarized in Figure 8.3.

The six factors listed above are the major reasons for differences between introductory texts and advanced texts.<sup>2</sup> Taking these into account, our system can generate descriptions that match naturally occurring ones in the corpus. The role these factors play will be illustrated by working through the generation of descriptions similar to ones presented in Figures 8.1 and 8.2.

Each of the factors described in the previous section affects some of the other factors in varying degrees. For instance, the number of examples is dependent upon the number of features presented in each of the examples; the presence of prompts depends upon the number of features and the number of examples, etc. However, one of these factors, the placement of the examples with respect to the text, is more important than the others. This is because this factor, *the positioning of the examples, directly affects all of the other five factors*. The next section describes the effect of the text type on the other factors.

<sup>2</sup>These factors do not take into consideration differences in the phrasing and lexical choice.

---

For each issue, the effect of the text-type is:

- Examples:
  - introductory:** simple, single critical-feature
  - advanced:** complex, multiple critical-features
- Accompanying Description:
  - introductory:** surface, syntactic information
  - advanced:** complete information, including internal structure
- Number of Examples:
  - introductory:** depends upon number of critical features
  - advanced:** few (each example contains three to four features)
- Positioning the Examples:
  - introductory:** immediately after points being illustrated
  - advanced:** after the description is complete
- Prompts:
  - introductory:** prompt if example has more than one feature
  - advanced:** prompts if anomalous and recursive examples

Figure 8.3: Brief description of differences between examples in introductory and advanced texts.

---

## 8.5 Positioning the Examples

Examples can either occur *before* the text, *within* the text, or *after* the text. Consider for instance, the descriptions in Figure 8.4, taken from two introductory books, one on UNIX (Waite *et al.*, 1983), and the other on T<sub>p</sub>X (Abrahams *et al.*, 1990). In both cases, the descriptions have examples interspersed *within* the text. Consider the descriptions given in Figure 8.5 where the examples occur *before* the accompanying description, and Figure 8.6 where the examples occur *after* the description.

The three descriptions of a `list` in LISP given in Figure 8.7, illustrate three different descriptions occurring in three different text types. The placement of the examples in each of the descriptions is different: in the introductory case, the examples are interspersed within the description, in the intermediate case, the examples are before the description, and in the advanced case, the examples are after the description. These descriptions of a `list` emphasize how the same object can be presented very differently in different situations. We have already presented the generation of a `list` for an introductory text previously; in this chapter, we shall generate a description for an advanced text to illustrate how the placement of the examples affects the resulting descriptions.

### 8.5.1 Effect of the Placement on Comprehension

The position in which the examples appear affect the descriptions significantly. Studies on the efficacy of presenting examples in different positions with regard to the accompanying description showed that examples *within* and *after* the description are used most often. Klausmeier showed that texts for naive

---

UNIX has a **who** command, which results in a list of the people logged onto the system at that moment. An example of the command and its output is:

```
% who
bob          tty04 Aug 23  8:27
catfish      tty07 Aug 23  8:16
sneezy       tty15 Aug 23  8:52
granny       tty21 Aug 23 23:13
%
```

The first column gives the login name of the user. The second column identifies the terminal being used. The remaining columns give the date and time each user logged in.

From (Waite *et al.*, 1983), page 50.

---

A *delimiter* in  $\text{\TeX}$  is a character that is intended to be used as a visible boundary of a math formula. For example, the left and right parentheses are delimiters. If delimiters are used around a formula,  $\text{\TeX}$  makes the delimiters big enough to enclose the box that contains the formula. For example:

```
$$ \left( a \over b \right) $$
```

yields:

$$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)$$

$\text{\TeX}$  made the parentheses big enough to accomodate the fraction. But, if instead of the previous expression, one had:

```
$$ ({a \over b})$$
```

the result would be:

$$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)$$

Since the parentheses are not in a delimiter context, they are *not* enlarged.

From (Abrahams *et al.*, 1990), page 58.

---

Figure 8.4: Introductory Text: Examples within the description.

---

users were most effective when the example *immediately followed* the definition of the concept being illustrated (Klausmeier, 1976). MacLachlan (1986) found a number of correlations between the position of examples and their comprehension. His study found that the presentation of an example followed by an explanation of that example<sup>3</sup> (rather than an explanation of the concept that the example was an instance of) was an effective teaching method when the user was already familiar with the

---

<sup>3</sup>Thus resulting in a description where the example appeared *before* the accompanying explanation.

Consider the following expression, in which + is followed by something other than raw numbers:

`(+ (* 2 2) (/ 2 2))`

It is easy to see that `(* 2 2)` produces 4, `(/ 2 2)` produces 1, and these results, fed in turn to +, give 5 as the result. If, instead, we think of this expression as data, then we see that we have the three element list: + is the first element, the expression `(* 2 2)` is the second element and `(/ 2 2)` is the third. Thus lists themselves can be part of other lists.

From (Winston and Horn, 1984), page 20.

Figure 8.5: Intermediate Text: Examples often occur before an explanation.

---

Used without arguments, **who** lists the login name, terminal name, and login time for each current user. **who** gets this information from the `/etc/utmp` file.

[... 16 lines deleted ...]

```
example% who am i
example!ralph ttty0      Apr 27 11:24
example%
example% who
mktg  ttym0  Apr 27 11:11
gwen  ttty0  Apr 27 11:25
ralph ttty1  Apr 27 11:30
example%
```

From (UNIX Documentation, 1986)

Figure 8.6: Advanced Text: Examples usually occur after the description.

---

concept.<sup>4</sup> Most reference manuals include examples clustered *after* the description, e.g., (Meehan, 1979; Lucid, 1990; Steele Jr., 1984; UNIX Documentation, 1986). It is clear therefore, that each of these three possibilities may occur during generation, and must be handled by the generation system.

### 8.5.2 Determining the Placement of the Examples

Our corpus analysis has enabled us to identify two factors which govern the positioning of examples with respect to the description:

1. the *text type* in which the description is being generated, and
2. the *communicative goal* that the example achieves.

---

<sup>4</sup>This method is most effective when the user possesses a declarative knowledge of the concept, but lacks sufficient procedural knowledge about it to use the knowledge to do something with it.

---

A list always begins with a left parenthesis. Then come zero or more pieces of data (called the elements of a list) and a right parenthesis. Some examples of lists are:

```
(AARDVARK)
(RED YELLOW GREEN BLUE)
(2 3 5 11 19)
(3 FRENCH FRIES)
```

A list may contain other lists as elements. Given the three lists:

```
(BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH)
```

we can make a list by combining them all with a parentheses.

```
((BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH))
```

Introductory text (Touretzky, 1984)

---

```
(FORMAT *standard-output* "~a~d~a"
  (name person) (age person)
  (if (> (age person) 65) "senior" () ))
```

A list can contain atoms, numbers, strings or other lists as elements. For instance, the example above contains two atoms, a string and three lists as elements. A list can have any number of elements, as in the example above, where the top-level list contains six elements, and the some of the other lists contain two, three and zero elements. A list can also be a function, if it can be evaluated: in this case, the first element of the list is the name of the function.

Intermediate text (Winston and Horn, 1984)

---

A list is recursively defined to be either the empty list or a CONS whose CDR component is a list. The CAR components of the CONSES are called the elements of the list. For each element of the list, there is a CONS. The empty list has no elements at all. A list is annotated by writing the elements of the list in order, separated by blank space (space, tab, or return character) and surrounded by parentheses. For example:

```
(a b c)           ; A list of 3 symbols
(2.0s0 (a 1) #\*) ; A list of 3 things: a short floating point
                  ; number, another list and a character object
```

Advanced text (Steele Jr., 1984)

Figure 8.7: Three descriptions of a list in different text types.

---

The notion of a text type has previously been discussed in this chapter. The communicative goal,<sup>5</sup> or intentional goal, represents a desired state of affairs for the system to achieve. Examples of such goals in our system are:

```
(BEL HEARER (CONCEPT LIST))
(BEL HEARER (DISJOINT-COVERING
```

---

<sup>5</sup>Communicative goals have been mentioned previously in the context of our description of the system generating explanations. We briefly present it here, for the sake of completeness.

---

The decision to place an example before, within or after the description depends upon two co-constraining factors:

**1. The Text Type:**

- if the text type is either tutorial or introductory, and appropriate examples are available, generate examples to illustrate points as soon as they are mentioned in the description (examples occur within the description)
- if the text type is a reference text, prevent examples from being generated until the description is complete (examples appear after the description)

**2. The Communicative Goal:**

- if the top-level communicative goal can be achieved through an example, and the text type does not prevent it, then present the example and elaborate upon it in the description. (example occurs *before* the elaboration in the description)
- if a communicative goal, which is not a top-level communicative goal, can be realized through the presentation of examples, and the text type does not prevent it, then present the examples (*within* the description)
- if the presentation of example(s) achieves a goal to elaborate on a concept, and this goal is posted after a goal (at the same level in the discourse structure) to provide descriptive information about that concept, these examples will appear after the descriptive explanation

Figure 8.8: Algorithm for determining the placement of examples in a description.

---

**S-EXPRESSION (ATOM NUMBER STRING LIST)))**

The first communicative goal, for instance, causes the system to present to the hearer a description of a list. The second generates a description of the fact that an *s-expression* has a disjoint-covering of either an atom, a number, a string or a list. Among the many advantages in representing the intentional goals explicitly in the discourse structure that is generated by the planner is the ability to recover from communication failures, to engage in dialogue, and answer follow-up questions (Moore and Paris, 1989; Moore and Swartout, 1989). Communicative goals are also essential in determining where an example should be positioned with respect to the accompanying explanation.

An algorithm to determine the placement of examples is shown in Figure 8.8. The algorithm generates descriptions with examples that match the texts in our corpus, as well as the desiderata mentioned in psychological literature, e.g., examples should be presented after the definition in introductory texts (Feldman, 1972; Klausmeier, 1976); cases where the examples are the focus of instruction should have an elaboration on the features of the example rather than the concept, etc.

The next section elaborates on the algorithm, and discusses the effects of the positioning on the five other factors that vary with the text type.

### **8.5.3 Effect of the Positioning on the Other Factors**

This section describes how the algorithm determines where the example can be presented, and its implications for other issues in the generation. The cases that the system can encounter are:

- *the system finds an example to directly achieve the top-level discourse goal:* if the text type is intermediate,<sup>6</sup> the presentation of the example, followed by additional descriptive information elaborating on the features in the example satisfies the goal. In this case, the example is treated like a concept definition: the example is presented first, followed by an elaboration on the features in the example.

Consider for instance, the description from (Winston and Horn, 1984) in Figure 8.7. The description begins with an example followed by the explanation.<sup>7</sup> In such descriptions, the examples can be quite complex, depending upon the initial communicative goal.

- *the system finds an example that satisfies an intermediate level discourse goal:* if the text type is introductory, there are three possibilities for the system:
  1. the goal can be satisfied without using the example (only text is generated),
  2. the goal can be satisfied by presenting the example(s) (and some text may be elided), or
  3. the goal can be satisfied by presenting the example(s), as well as some text.

The planner must now make a choice between these three possibilities, based on the context (the knowledge base, user model, as well as the dialogue history). If either #2 or #3 are chosen, the result will be examples interspersed within the description, as in the description from (Touretzky, 1984) given in Figure 8.7. The choice is made as follows: if the definition of the concept has not yet been presented, then the system cannot present examples at that point, but must generate text (this is what happened in the case of *predicate-relation-form* in Section 7.3). If the definition has been presented, the goal is to elaborate upon a recursive, or an anomalous feature (such as, for instance, a list of lists), then the system generates both text and examples. Otherwise, the system presents only examples.

Consider the description from (Touretzky, 1984) in Figure 8.7: the first set of examples are used to illustrate two features about data elements in a list: (i) the fact that the number of elements in a list can vary, and (2) the type of elements in a list can also vary. This fact could also have been expressed by a descriptive explanation as in: *"The types of the elements of a list can be either atoms, numbers, or both"*, following the statement about the number of elements. As can be seen in this description, the communicative goal of expressing the different types of elements is satisfied by presenting a group of examples, causing the sentence above (in italics) to be elided from the resulting description.

In the last example, when the system had a goal of elaborating upon a list of lists, the system presented both the textual explanation, as well as an example.

- *the text type constraint prevents the generation of examples by communicative goals before the top-level goal to describe the concept has been achieved:* this is the case in reference texts as seen in the description from (Steele Jr., 1984) in Figure 8.7. There are two important implications of postponing the presentation of examples until the complete description has been given:
  1. Since the text type constraints prevent the generation of examples to satisfy intermediate level discourse goals immediately, all intermediate level discourse goals *must be realized in text*. This implies that the textual description generated cannot have portions replaced by example elaboration, thus resulting in *descriptions that are comprehensive and complete*.
  2. Since all the goals to generate examples are postponed till the end, examples that satisfy multiple goals can be generated. This results in examples that are more complex, have multiple features and illustrate more than one point. This results in the need to generate prompts with the examples to ensure that the user does not miss the points being made

<sup>6</sup>The system reasons that in an intermediate text type, basic definitions of concepts are known to the intended user.

<sup>7</sup>While the description begins with a 'background' statement, this statement serves as background to the example, and in our system would be generated as part of the example.

by the examples. Prompts may also become necessary because the examples may now be presented physically distant from the description.

We have presented our algorithm, and some of the implications that arise from the use of this algorithm in the generation of descriptions with examples. The algorithm has worked well in determining the placement of examples in descriptions generated by our system; in addition, the algorithm correctly predicted the position of examples in hand simulations of other texts in our corpus.

## 8.6 A Trace of the system

The generation of an integrated description for introductory texts has already been described in Section 6.3. We will illustrate the working of the algorithm by generating a description of a LISP list when the text type is advanced. The descriptions of the concept list should resemble the ones presented in Figure 8.1 and 8.2. Since the generation of the description for an introductory text type has previously been described, we will only discuss the points at which the text type plays a role in the decision making process.

### 8.6.1 Text Type: Introductory

The top-level goal given to the system in both cases is (BEL HEARER (CONCEPT LIST)). In the case of an introductory text, the text type restricts the choice of the features to present to be syntactic ones. The main features of list are retrieved, and two subgoals are posted: one to list the critical features (the left parenthesis, the data elements and the right parenthesis), and another to elaborate upon them (Figure 8.9 shows the skeletal text plan again). The system also needs to elaborate upon the data elements of a list. These can be of three types: numbers, symbols, or lists. The system can either communicate this information by realizing an appropriate sentence, or through examples -- since it can generate examples for each of these types, or both. The introductory text type constraints cause the system to pick examples to satisfy this intermediate level discourse goal. The system posts two goals to illustrate the two dimensions along which the data elements can vary: the *number of elements* and the *type*.

At this point, the system can present a few complex, multi-featured examples of data-elements in a list, or it can present a larger number of simpler examples. The text type constraints force the system to choose the simple, single featured examples. Thus the planner generates a goal to present an example of each type: symbols, numbers, symbols and numbers, and sub-lists. Because the text type is introductory, the last data type, *sub-lists*, is marked by the planner as a *recursive* use of the concept, and has to be handled specially. In the case of an introductory text, such examples must be introduced with appropriate explanations added to the text. For this data type therefore, the planner realizes the goal through both text and examples. The resulting skeletal text-plan generated by the system is shown in Fig. 8.10. The resulting output is shown in the screen dump in Figure 8.11.

### 8.6.2 Text Type: Advanced

Consider the second case, in which the text type is specified as 'advanced.' The system starts with the same top-level goal as before, but the text type constraints cause the planner to select both the structural representation of a list, as well as the syntactic structure for presentation. This results in

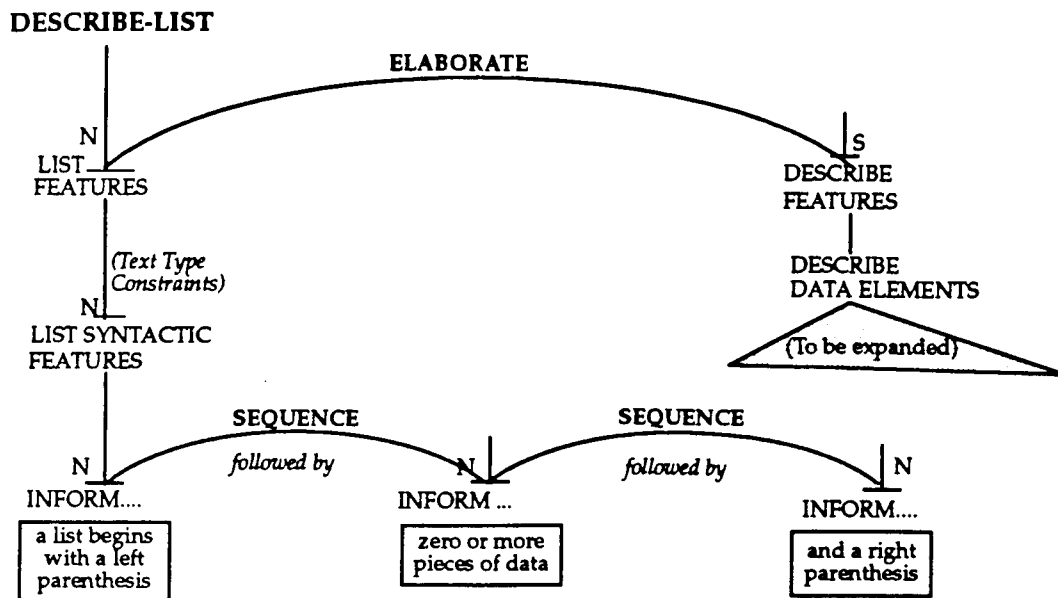


Figure 8.9: Skeletal plan for listing main features of list.

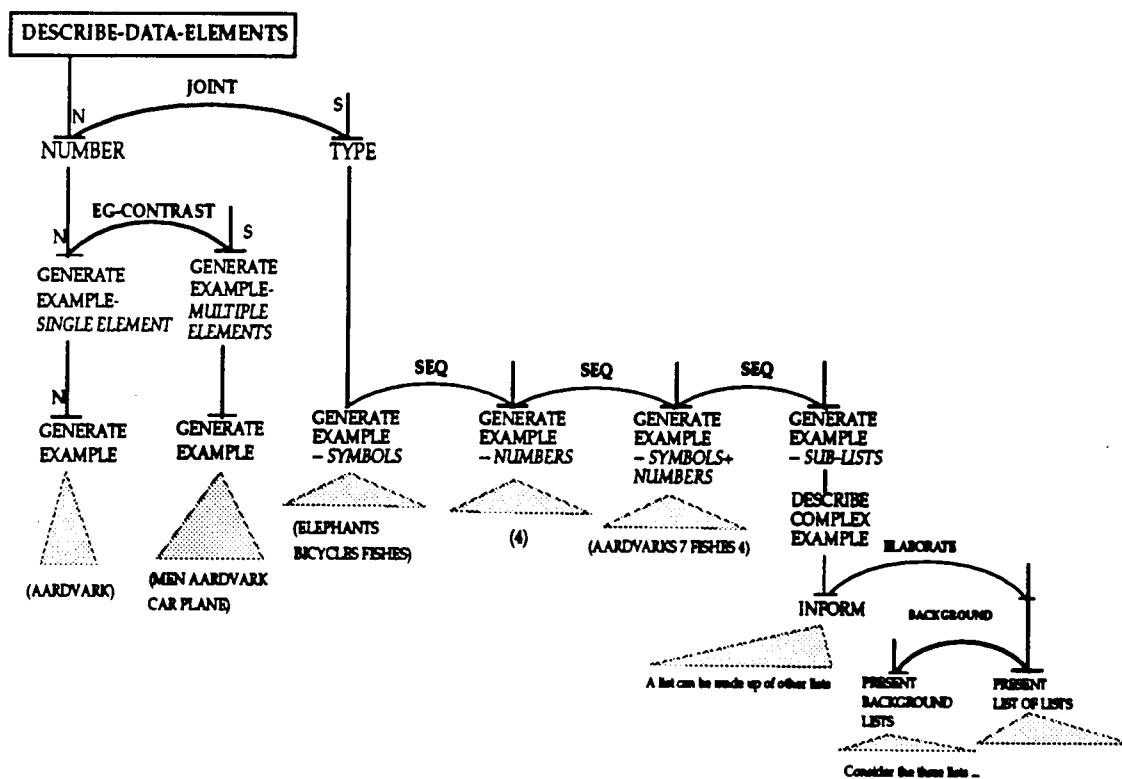


Figure 8.10: Skeletal plan for generating examples of lists.



the planner selecting the following features for presentation:<sup>8</sup>

**Structural Features:**

```
(ISA LIST (OR EMPTY-LIST
            (CONS-CELL (CAR :type      :name "list-elements")
                        (CDR :type LIST :name      ))))
```

**Syntactic Features:**

```
(LEFT-PARENTHESIS (KLEENE-CLOSURE DATA-ELEMENTS)
                   RIGHT-PARENTHESIS
```

The planner posts two goals, one a NUCLEUS subgoal to describe the list textually, and a SATELLITE subgoal to present examples about it, related by the coherence relation EXAMPLE. (This results in the phrase "For example ... .") The NUCLEUS sub-goal is to describe a list (textually). It posts two NUCLEUS goals: one to describe the underlying structure, and one to describe the syntactic form of a list. These two goals are linked by the coherence relation JOINT (this is because, unlike SEQUENCE in the previous description, there is no particular ordering between the structural and syntactic descriptions here).

The goal to describe the structure paraphrases the feature as follows:

A list is defined to be either the empty list or a CONS cell whose CDR component is a list. The CAR components of the CONSES are called elements of the list.

The planner queries the knowledge representation for any further information regarding a list. Two other facts are retrieved about list-elements: there is a CONS cell for each element, and there are no elements in an empty-list. The planner generates English for these two facts as well. Both of these statements are linked to the (DESCRIBE (STRUCTURE LIST)) goal through the ELABORATE coherence relation. The final output as a result of the (DESCRIBE (STRUCTURE LIST)) goal is:

A list is defined to be either the empty list or a CONS cell whose CDR component is a list. The CAR components of the CONSES are called elements of the list. For each element of the list, there is a CONS cell. The empty list NIL has no elements.

The second sub-goal posted because of the top-level NUCLEUS goal is for generating a syntactic description of a list. Since the text type prevents the generation of any examples for intermediate level discourse goals, the sub-goal of (DESCRIBE (SYNTAX LIST)) results in a purely textual description. The generation of such a description is described in Section 6.1, and will not be repeated here. Since our system does not currently address the phrasing issue, the description about the syntactic specification of a list is exactly the same as in the introductory case (without examples). The only difference is that since the text type is advanced, the system retrieves two additional types of data elements: characters and strings. These are not presented in introductory texts.<sup>9</sup> This results in the following output:

A list consists of a left parenthesis, followed by zero or more data elements, followed by a right parenthesis. Data elements can be either symbols, numbers, characters, strings, lists, or a mixture thereof.

Since the advanced text type constrains the system from realizing any of the intermediate level discourse goals by presenting examples, the description generated so far is:

<sup>8</sup>The structural element selected for paraphrasing is illustrated here in simplified fashion, rather than the LOOM notation for clarity.

<sup>9</sup>Both of these types are not defined in introductory texts before the list is described. Quite often, the character type is not mentioned through out the introductory book. We implemented our text type constraints to take these types to be 'advanced.'

- free of any examples: the only examples presented are due to the top-level SATELLITE goal,
- the textual description is comprehensive: all the information is presented in the description, since examples cannot possibly cause the elision of text

The system still needs to expand the top level SATELLITE goal to present examples. This sub-goal is related to the NUCLEUS sub-goal through the EXAMPLE relation, which results in the generation of the "For example:" phrase between the two text spans which result from the nucleus and the satellite expansions. The text type constrains the system to generate as few examples as possible. Since at least two examples are required to show the variable nature of any feature, the system generates two examples of a list to illustrate the data elements. To generate the maximum contrast possible between two examples of a list, the system posts two goals: one to generate an example of a list illustrating the following features:

Example 1	Example 2
data elements can be: symbols	data elements can be: numbers, characters, lists, strings, or a mixture,

In constructing the two examples, the system picks simple symbols for the first example, and complex instances to build the second example: thus the system selects a floating point number rather than an integer as an element of the list. The example generator also ensures that the lists generated are all of different lengths. The planner finds that the second example is recursive: there is a list as an element of the list. Since the planner cannot generate background text in this text type, the planner generates prompts for the examples.<sup>10</sup> The resulting text plan and output is shown in Figures 8.12 and 8.13.

## 8.7 Discussion

We have presented an analysis of the differences in descriptions that integrate examples for introductory and advanced texts. The variations occur not just in the descriptive part of the explanations, but also in the examples that accompany them. Since the examples and the descriptive component are tightly integrated and affect each other in many ways, a system designed to generate such descriptions must take into account these interactions and be able to structure the presentation accordingly. We have presented information necessary to generate descriptions for these two text types. The algorithm used by the system was illustrated by tracing the generation of two descriptions of the LISP list.

<sup>10</sup>The planner need only generate a prompt for the second example; however, in an attempt to replicate the texts in our corpus, the system generates prompts for all examples in a group if a prompt is necessary for one of them.

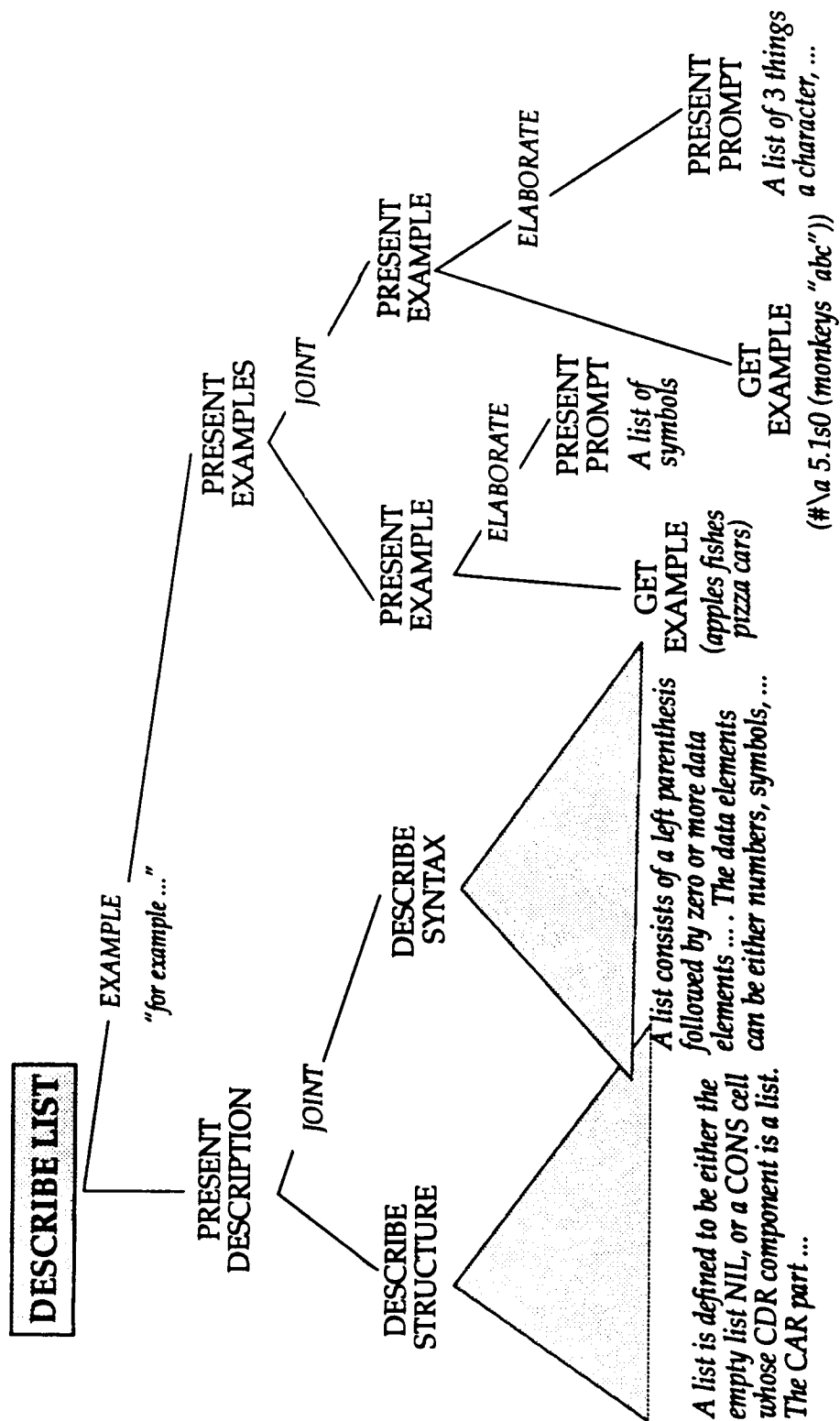


Figure 8.12: Text plan for the reference manual description of a list.

**DELETE BURY ROTATE**

A list is defined to be either the empty list or a CONS cell whose CDR component is a list. The CAR components of the CONSes are called the elements of the list. For each element of the list, there is a CONS. The empty list NIL has no elements.

A list consists of a left parenthesis, followed by zero or more data elements, followed by a right parenthesis. Data elements can be either symbols, numbers, characters, strings lists, or a mixture thereof. For example:

```
(apples fishes pizza cars)      ; A list of symbols
(#\a 5.1s0 (monkey "abc"))    ; A list of 3 things: a character
                                ; a floating point number, and
                                ; another list
```

Figure 8.13: A snap-shot of the system's description of the advanced description of a list.

## Chapter 9

### Evaluation

*The proof of the pudding is in the eating.*

*-- Don Quixote de la Mancha<sup>†</sup>*

The previous chapters have dealt with different aspects of the generation of descriptions with integrated examples. We have enumerated the important issues involved, and presented system traces of the generation of various descriptions. However, the validity of the issues identified as relevant must be verified before acceptance. An empirical evaluation of the efficacy of the different issues involved can also help in gaining a better understanding of the relative importance of the issues. This chapter presents an evaluation of the different heuristics that the system uses.

### 9.1 Evaluating the Output

Evaluating Natural Language Generation (NLG) systems is a difficult task. A workshop on NLG evaluation (Hovy and Meteer, 1990) acknowledged the importance of evaluation, but did not reach any definite conclusion on how NLG systems may be evaluated. Previous approaches to this question have been based on an introspective analysis of the fluency of the generated text. Kukich (1983) and Mellish & Evans (1989) performed such an analysis for their systems. While fluency is important, our emphasis in this case is to do with information presented in a useful and effective form. The descriptions generated by our system for the INTEND grammar were liked by the members of our project. The LISP descriptions were also considered very readable by people who took part in our evaluation.

The main motivation for our system was the presentation of examples and their integration with the accompanying explanation. It is essential that the writer explicitly consider the communicative effects of each example on the reader and take these into account during the discourse planning process. This

---

<sup>†</sup>In (de Cervantes, 1981), page 322.

is important because examples and text strongly constrain each other, and explanations in which these two components are not well integrated can cause a loss of comprehension (Chandler and Sweller, 1991), or even mis-lead the reader into making incorrect inferences based on implicit or assumed information (Merrill and Tennyson, 1978). If the heuristics presented in this thesis allow the system to generate descriptions that minimize such occurrences, then the heuristics can be considered useful. To this end, we compared the presentations generated by using our heuristics to descriptions in text books to see the effect of a systematic application of our principles.

Appendix A presents seven descriptions of a list from popular introductory or texts on LISP. We analysed each of these descriptions for their example presentations, and their integration with the textual explanation. Based on the requirements identified in various psychological studies, we consider that at least 5 of the descriptions do not satisfy all of the requirements in some form or the other, such as presenting examples ordered by complexity, or marking anomalous cases, etc. The remaining two descriptions do not violate these requirements, and are therefore good by these educational/cognitive standards. Given that the description generated by our system takes all of these factors into account, we consider our description to be of better than average quality, at least according to the educational/cognitive scale.

The seven descriptions presented in Appendix A illustrate some of the shortcomings that are often found in naturally occurring texts. This may be due to the fact that people are prone to write descriptions without keeping in mind all the different issues that can lead to reduced reader comprehension.<sup>1</sup> As an example of how some of these issues can be over looked by people, consider for instance the examples presented in a description of a list in an advanced text (Steele Jr., 1984).

(a b c)	; A list of 3 symbols
(2.0s0 (a 1) #\*)	; A list of 3 things: a floating point
	; number, another list, and a character
	; object

This description presents two lists (at the top level), both of which have three elements. Given this description, the user may possibly generalize incorrectly that top level lists must contain exactly three elements.

## 9.2 Evaluating the Issues

To test the validity and estimate the importance of the issues mentioned in Section 3, we attempted to empirically evaluate the effect of each factor on the comprehensibility and ease of understanding of descriptions containing examples. To do so, we generated two descriptions, one taking the factor into account, and the other specifically disregarding the factor.<sup>2</sup> Subjects were then made to answer a set of questions, categorizing different examples as either belonging, or not belonging, to the concept under consideration.

The test subjects were a number of graduate students in different departments at USC, Carnegie-Mellon University and the University of Pittsburgh.<sup>3</sup> These subjects may well represent the most

<sup>1</sup>After a discussion on these issues, a computational linguist once remarked to me that he had neglected to consider some of these issues in his current writing; he revised his document after the discussion, and reported that he found his presentation greatly improved (Kerpedjiev, 1993).

<sup>2</sup>Some of these descriptions were generated by the system, by modifying the text planning operators to not consider specific issues; others were generated manually, specifically for the evaluation.

<sup>3</sup>Most of these tests were given to twelve students. With the exception of two students, the subjects were not in Computer Science.

---

(GENSYM &optional (PREFIX "G"))

GENSYM is a function call with an optional argument called PREFIX. It returns a new, uninterned symbol, whose print name begins with PREFIX and ends with a number; the number is incremented with each call to GENSYM and the default value of PREFIX is reset to whatever is passed as an argument to GENSYM.

---

(GENSYM &optional (PREFIX "G"))

GENSYM is a function call with an optional argument called PREFIX. For example:

```
(GENSYM)
(GENSYM "ABC")
```

The function returns a new, uninterned symbol, whose print name begins with PREFIX and ends with a number. For example:

```
(GENSYM "ABC") ==> #:ABC26
```

The number is incremented with each call to GENSYM.

```
(GENSYM "ABC") ==> #:ABC27
(GENSYM "ABC") ==> #:ABC28
```

The default value of PREFIX is reset to whatever string is passed as an argument to GENSYM.

```
(GENSYM "USC") ==> #:USC29
(GENSYM)       ==> #:USC30
```

Figure 9.1: Descriptions with and without Examples.

---

likely initial users of such help facilities; all of them use advanced equipment almost constantly throughout the day. All of these subjects represented the naive user being introduced to the domain. However, for more representative results, these tests should ideally be administered on a broader cross section of subjects with different backgrounds. An initial problem with the use of graduate students was that they were very unwilling to be 'beaten' by a question; they would consequently spend large amounts of time reading and re-reading the description until they could answer the questions. The first few questionnaires were returned with almost all of the answers marked correctly, though the time taken to answer the tests differed drastically. We decided that the only way to test for relative superiority among the concept descriptions was to limit the amount of time available for answering the questions.<sup>4</sup> This forced the subjects to try and understand the concept from the two descriptions in similar amounts of time. The rest of the section describes the results obtained in our study.

---

<sup>4</sup>This is the same approach taken in most of the standardized tests, such as the GRE, SAT, etc.

FUNCTION CALL	⇒	OUTPUT	CORRECT	INCORRECT
(GENSYM)	⇒	ERROR!	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:G27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "ABC")	⇒	#:ABC27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "ABC")	⇒	#:GABC27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "ABC")	⇒	#:GABC27#:GABC28	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "ABC")	⇒	#:ABC28	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:G29	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:G30	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:ABC31	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:ABC29	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:ABC30	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "ABC")	⇒	#:ABC30ABC31	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "G")	⇒	#:ABC30G32	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:G27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:G28	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM " #:G28")	⇒	#:G2829	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM)	⇒	#:G32	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "XYZ")	⇒	#:XYZ27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "XYZ")	⇒	#:XYZ#:XYZ27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
(GENSYM "XYZ")	⇒	#:XYZ#:XYZ#:XYZ27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 9.2: Questionnaire on GENSYM used to test effectiveness of examples.

### 9.2.1 Descriptions With and Without Examples

There have been a number of studies on the usefulness of examples, especially in documentation, e.g., (Charney *et al.*, 1988), but we decided to see the results with our subjects. The subjects were split into two groups. Four different concept descriptions were given to the subjects. Each description had two versions: one with examples, and another without examples which were given to the two groups. One such pair of descriptions on the LISP function GENSYM is shown in Figure 9.1 and the questions are shown in Figure 9.2.

The group given the description without the examples made between 4 and 11 mistakes out of the 21 questions. The average number of mistakes made were 6 mistakes. (Most of these mistakes were around the notion of the prefix being 'reset.')

However, in the second group -- the group who were given the description with included examples -- the maximum number of mistakes made by people was 4 (the average number of mistakes was 2), and there were 6 people who made no mistakes. The results indicate that the inclusion of examples helped clarify the issues for the users.

### 9.2.2 Positioning the Example

It is important that examples be placed appropriately with respect to the accompanying text. We have seen in previous chapters how examples can sometimes occur before the text, within the text, and after the text, depending upon the text type. Empirical studies have shown that in the case of introductory users, the best placement of examples seems to be immediately following the point they are supposed to illustrate. We presented the descriptions shown in Figure 9.3 and 9.4 to our test subjects, who were novices with respect to T<sub>E</sub>X. For a description with examples *before* the explanation,

---

Stacking operations are used in TeX to produce fractions: `\over` produces fractions with the argument on the left hand side becoming the numerator, and the right hand side argument becoming the denominator. Other variations of `\over` are:

- `\atop` which leaves out the fraction bar
- `\above` which provides a fraction bar of a specified thickness
- `\choose` which leaves out the fraction bar and encloses the construct in parentheses
- `\brace` which leaves out the fraction bar and encloses the construct in braces
- `\brack` which leaves out the fraction bar and encloses the construct in brackets.

For example:

```

 $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$  \quad  $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$  \quad  $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$ 
 $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$  \quad  $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$  \quad  $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$ 
 $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$  \quad  $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$  \quad  $\frac{n+1}{n-1}$ 

```

produces:

$$\frac{n+1}{n-1} \quad \frac{n+1}{n-1} \quad \frac{n+1}{n-1} \quad \left(\frac{n+1}{n-1}\right) \quad \left\{\frac{n+1}{n-1}\right\} \quad \left[\frac{n+1}{n-1}\right]$$

Figure 9.3: Description with examples after the description.

---

we used the same description as in Figure 9.3, with the positions of the example and the explanation interchanged.

The test subjects were split into three groups, one for each description. Each of the groups was given a minute to study the descriptions (this is the time it takes to read the description twice). The subjects were made to answer 10 questions related to the stacking operator in TeX. In the group with interspersed examples, only one person made a mistake. In the group with examples after the description, 5 people made an average of 3 mistakes, and in the group with the examples given before the description, the result was almost identical, with one additional person making a mistake.

In the case of naive users therefore, the placement of examples immediately after the concept's definition seems indicated as the most beneficial.

### 9.2.3 Presentation of Different Example Types

Chapter 4 dealt with the different example types in our system. According to our categorization, examples can vary along three dimensions: their polarity with respect to the definition they accompany, the text type for which they are generated, and the knowledge type of which they happen to be instances. For a concept therefore, an example (and its associated presentation) can be varied along the polarity and the text type. In this section, we consider the issue of polarity.

The polarity of an example can either be positive, negative, or anomalous. The importance of negative examples in concept learning has already been shown by empirical studies, e.g., (Feldman, 1972; Houtz *et al.*, 1973). However, we are not aware of studies on the presentation of anomalous examples

---

`\over` produces fractions, with the argument on the left hand side becoming the numerator, and the right hand side argument becoming the denominator. For instance: `$$\{n+1 \over n-1}\$` produces

$$\frac{n+1}{n-1}$$

Other variations of `\over` are: `\atop` which leaves out the fraction bar. For instance: `$$\{n+1 \atop n-1}\$` produces:

$$\begin{array}{c} n+1 \\ n-1 \end{array}$$

`\above` which provides a fraction bar of a specified thickness. Thus: `$$\{n+1 \above 2pt n-1}\$` produces:

$$\frac{n+1}{\rule{0.8cm}{2pt}}{n-1}$$

`\choose` which leaves out the fraction bar and encloses the construct in parentheses, as in: `$$\{n+1 \choose n-1}\$` which produces:

$$\begin{pmatrix} n+1 \\ n-1 \end{pmatrix}$$

`\brace` which leaves out the fraction bar and encloses the construct in braces, as in: `$$\{n+1 \brace n-1}\$`, which produces:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} n+1 \\ n-1 \end{array} \right\}$$

and `\brack` which leaves out the fraction bar and encloses the construct in brackets, as in: `$$\{n+1 \brack n-1}\$`, which produces

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c} n+1 \\ n-1 \end{array} \right]$$

---

Figure 9.4: Description with examples within the description.

---

with, or apart (marked as specifically different) from the regular examples.<sup>5</sup> We therefore decided to study the differences in the presentation of anomalous examples together with, and apart from the normal examples.

Consider the two descriptions of the UNIX command `who` shown in Figures 9.5 and 9.6. In the case of Figure 9.5, even though the description talks only about files as being arguments to the command, the examples presented include the two<sup>6</sup> anomalous cases of `who`. The distinction between the normal arguments to `who` (files) and the exceptional cases of `who` are much more clearly marked in Figure 9.6. This is clearly a case of an anomalous example, since by the classification presented in Chapter 4, anomalous examples are defined to include 'instances that are examples, but are not covered by the definition.' In the evaluation, all of the subjects given the first description (with unmarked anomalous examples) got all questions of the form:

---

<sup>5</sup>Though this has been suggested in (Engelmann and Carnine, 1982).

<sup>6</sup>The command `whoami` is not considered here, since by UNIX standards, it is not a special form of the `who am i` command, but an entirely different one.

```
who is <user-name>
who <user-name>
```

wrong.<sup>7</sup> Only 2 out of the 6 people given the second description with marked analogous examples got questions of this type wrong. It would seem therefore that it is important to separate and explicitly present anomalous examples as such.

## 9.2.4 On the Complexity and Number of Examples

As we have already stated in Chapter 3, the more the number of features illustrated in each example, the less the number of examples required to illustrate all the features of the concept. Even if the same number of examples are used in two cases, one with simple examples, and one with complex multi-featured examples, the descriptions are likely to be understood to different extents. In our test, we asked our volunteers to look at two descriptions that featured the `FORMAT` statement in `LISP` and then answer questions on simple aspects of the `FORMAT` statement.<sup>8</sup> The description with the two sets of examples is shown in Figure 9.7.

We conducted two tests with these descriptions: in the first case, four members of the group were given the description and the three simple examples. The second group was given the description with the three complex examples, while the third group was given the description with only the last example. The first group got all their answers right, while the second group made an average of 2 mistakes out of the 10 questions (one person got all the answers correct). The third group, which was given a single question, fared the worst, with none of the four getting all the answers correct, and the average number of mistakes per person being 3.25.

In another test on the number of examples required, the subjects were given more examples than the number of features being illustrated. The success rate did not rise significantly beyond that in which the each example illustrated one feature. It would thus appear that the larger the number of examples presented to naive users, the better their understanding of the concept.

## 9.2.5 Order of Presentation of the Examples

It is important that the examples be presented in the correct sequence. Since examples are not generated in isolation, but with associated material such as prompts, background information, or contrasting negative examples, the associated information will also be moved around if the example 'moves away' from its correct position in the sequence. An instance of this can be seen in Figure 9.8, where the original description of a list (described in Section 6.3) was generated with the ordering constraint on the plan operators reversed. The system generated the goals to elaborate upon the data elements of a list. To satisfy this goal, the system needed to present examples of lists in which the data-elements were atoms, numbers, lists, and a mixture of the above. The system chose (because of reversed ordering) to satisfy the goal of presenting a list of lists first. However, since this is a recursive case, the system was forced to present background material in the form of other lists, resulting the description presented in Figure 9.8, which does not resemble any of the descriptions we have observed in our corpus. This figure also illustrates again the strong mutual interaction of the examples and text in a description. Changing any of the factors that affect one is likely to affect the other as well. From this description, it is clear that ordering is an important factor in ensuring the overall description generated is coherent and useful. In other descriptions, where the description took into

<sup>7</sup>People with some previous exposure to `UNIX` were especially prone to making errors in the first case because of the presence of the `whois` command in `UNIX`.

<sup>8</sup>The last example shown in Figure 9.7 was accompanied with extra information that gave the values for '(get-name person)' and so on.

---

**who:** When used without arguments, **who** lists the login name, terminal name, and login time for each current user. When a file name is specified, **who** examines its contents and lists it as shown:

```
example% who
  ramesh  console Aug 23 09:34
  ramesh  tty0    Aug 24 14:19  (:0.0)
  macgreg tty2    Sep  2 09:36  (128.9.208.151:0.)
  mittal  ttypb   Sep  4 11:18  (seuss.isi.edu)
example% who /var/adm/wtmp
  mittal  tty5    Feb 12 13:13 (power-chow.isi.e)
  mittal  tty5    Feb 12 13:15 (power-chow.isi.e)
  ees     tty7    Feb 12 13:24 (doc.isi.edu)
  koda    tty7    Feb 12 13:30 (rising.isi.edu)
example% who am i
  doc.isi.edu!mittal  ttypb   Sep  4 11:18  (seuss.isi.edu)
example% who is who
  doc.isi.edu!mittal  ttypb   Sep  4 11:18  (seuss.isi.edu)
```

---

Figure 9.5: Description with anomalous examples not explicitly marked.

---

**who:** When used without arguments, **who** lists the login name, terminal name, and login ... [lines deleted] ... contents. Examples of the usage of **who** are:

```
example% who
  ramesh  console Aug 23 09:34
  :
  koda    tty7    Feb 12 13:30  (rising.isi.edu)
```

However, there are two cases in which the argument to **who** need not be a file name. **who** can be used to find out who you are logged in as: it displays your hostname, login name, terminal name, and login time.

```
example% who am i
  doc.isi.edu!mittal  ttypb   Sep  4 11:18  (seuss.isi.edu)
example% who is who
  doc.isi.edu!mittal  ttypb   Sep  4 11:18  (seuss.isi.edu)
```

---

Figure 9.6: Description with anomalous examples clearly marked.

---

account the pairing of positive and negative examples for critical features and the pairs were ordered by the complexity of the feature being illustrated, the group that was given the ordered description fared better (2 mistakes out of 10) than the group which did not (6 mistakes on the average).

---

### Description:

FORMAT is a powerful, generalized string manipulation function. FORMAT takes three types of arguments: a stream on which to write (this can be NIL), a control string containing directives, and the information to be used by the directives. Different directives are used to process different types of data to be inserted into the output string. `a` is used for ASCII strings, while `c` is used to print characters, and `d` to print integers in decimal notation.

### Simple Examples:

```
(format nil "Blue Bird") => "Blue Bird"
(format nil "~a" "Green Grass") => "Green Grass"
(format nil "Its a ~A! Its a ~A!" "bird" "plane")
=> "Its a bird! Its a plane!"
(format nil "~a~%~a" "who?" "what?") =>
"who?
what?"
```

### Complex Examples:

```
(format nil "The answer is ~D." (expt 47 5)) =>
"The answer is 229,345,007."
(format nil "Type ~C to ~A."
(set-char-bit #\D :control t) "delete all files")
=> "Type Control-D to delete all files."
(format nil "~% Name: ~a~% ~a~a" (get-name person)
(if (get-address person) (get-address person) "No known address")
(if (get-age person) (format nil "~a:~a" "Age:" (get-age person))))
```

Figure 9.7: Descriptions with simple and complex examples.

---

---

A list begins with a left parenthesis. Then come zero or more pieces of data (called the elements of a list) and a right parenthesis. A list may contain other lists as elements. Given the three lists:

(BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH)

we can make a list by combining them all with a parentheses

((BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH))

Other examples are:

(3 FRENCH FRIES)  
(RED ORANGE GRAPE CAR)  
(RED YELLOW GREEN BLUE)  
(AARDVARK)  
(2 3 5 11 19)

Figure 9.8: The description of a list, with no ordering on the examples.

---

<code>%!PS</code>	<i>% define inch procedure</i>
<code>/inch { 72 mul } def</code>	<i>% draw a circle</i>
<code>306 396 270 0 360 arc</code>	<i>% finish circle</i>
<code>closepath</code>	<i>% remember graphics state</i>
<code>gsave</code>	<i>% medium gray shade</i>
<code>0.50 setgray</code>	<i>% fill circle</i>
<code>fill</code>	<i>% restore graphics state</i>
<code>grestore</code>	<i>% fat line width</i>
<code>72 setlinewidth</code>	<i>% paint outline of circle</i>
<code>stroke</code>	<i>% find a font</i>
<code>/Palatino-Bold findfont</code>	<i>% make letters large</i>
<code>360 scalefont</code>	<i>% set current font</i>
<code>setfont</code>	<i>% position current point</i>
<code>96 275 moveto</code>	<i>% get character path</i>
<code>(PS) false charpath</code>	<i>% remember graphics state</i>
<code>gsave</code>	<i>% fat line width</i>
<code>18 setlinewidth</code>	<i>% paint outline of characters</i>
<code>stroke</code>	<i>% restore graphics state</i>
<code>grestore</code>	<i>% white color</i>
<code>1.0 setgray</code>	<i>% fill character outlines</i>
<code>fill</code>	<i>% display page</i>
<code>showpage</code>	

Figure 9.9: Example used in testing the effect of prompts.

---

## 9.2.6 On the Need for Prompts



As we have mentioned previously (Section 3.8), prompts are usually seen in reference texts, where complex examples illustrating multiple points are presented. Prompts serve to highlight factors in the example that may not have been mentioned immediately before the example is presented. To test for the efficacy of prompts in the presence of such descriptions, we presented our subjects with relatively long descriptions (more than 10 lines) from different books and presented multi-featured examples, with and without prompts to them. An instance of the multi-featured example presented in this evaluation is shown in Figure 9.9. The same example was used, once with prompts as shown, and once without prompts. (The postscript code generates the output shown in Figure 9.10). The description accompanying these examples in the test was a page from (McGilton and Campione, 1992). The group given the example with prompts fared better than the one without prompts: the average number of mistakes made in the two groups were 3 and 5, out of a possible 12 questions. Thus, it would seem that prompts play a useful role in certain text types.

## 9.3 Discussion

The evaluation reported in this chapter on the effect of different factors in the generation of integrated descriptions indicate their importance and necessity for coherence and comprehensibility. This chapter presented some of the descriptions that were used in the evaluation. There are undoubtedly many ways in which the evaluation could have been improved: for instance, the number of participants could have been increased, the issues could have been analysed at finer levels of detail, and statistical correlations derived. However, due to a lack of both resources and time, we conducted the limited experiments described here. These experiments suggest that the issues identified from the corpus analysis may be worth further study. This skeletal evaluation served that goal satisfactorily: each of the issues tested for did indeed suggest a correlation with comprehension. Thus, it may be useful to further consider these, and related issues, in the design of systems meant to generate descriptions integrating text and examples together.

An important issue that we discussed briefly in Section 9.1 was on how closely the descriptions generated by our system matched those found in naturally occurring texts. It is important to state here that our system cannot generate any descriptions that depend upon the underlying semantics in any way because we do not have represent these semantics now. Almost all of the texts in our corpus show some variation in their writing style, even among the reference manuals. In most cases, this is because while the major part of the manual may have been written by one person (albeit over a long period of time), there are often sections that are written by other authors. Thus, for instance, in the case of the LISP manual (Steele Jr., 1984), whole chapters (on format and loop, for instance) have been written by other people. Writing styles can thus vary even within the same book. An example of such a book is the one on LISP programming by Winston and Horn (1984); on the other hand, some of the

manuals, or reference texts in our corpus were written in a very rigid format, e.g., (Meehan, 1979; McCarthy *et al.*, 1985).

Our heuristics cover perhaps about 80 per cent of the texts that we have seen in our corpus. The figure refers to how often our heuristics matched naturally occurring texts in the following criteria: (i) the position of the examples with respect to the explanation; (ii) if the example(s) are within the explanation, the point at which the example(s) occur; (iii) type of examples (single featured, positive, negative, etc); (iv) the order of presentation of the examples; (v) the communication of information through text, examples and both; (vi) the presence or absence of anomalous examples, and their treatment; (vii) the presence of background explanation and examples for recursive cases, and (viii) the use of prompts. The figure does not take into account the actual examples themselves, i.e., whether the quality of the examples generated by the example generator component matched the quality of examples found in our corpus. This was due to the use of only syntactic and type knowledge by our system in the example generation process. Since the current implementation does not represent, or reason with, the semantics of the different constructs, the actual examples generated are often quite unlike the ones seen in the corpus. Examples in naturally occurring texts are usually written by taking into account the semantics of the construct, their typical usage and the non-syntactic relationships between different parts of the examples. This will be seen clearly in Appendix D, where some of the descriptions planned by the system are presented.

## Chapter 10

### Conclusions and Future Work

*Everybody talks about documentation,  
but nobody does anything about it.*

*-- Anonymous*

This thesis argues for the presentation of examples in user help and automatically generated documentation. Documentation is an important factor in user acceptance of any system; it is essential that a system designed to automatically generate documentation be able to generate descriptions that include examples. Previous approaches to the generation of descriptions did not address the issue of presenting examples as an integrated part of a coherent description. This thesis presents one approach to the planning and presentation of such descriptions that integrate examples and text.

#### 10.1 Contributions

There are a number of issues that must be identified and addressed if a system is to be designed to plan complex descriptions that involve both text and examples. In this thesis, we presented these issues -- based on a synthesis of results in related fields such as educational psychology, as well as our own corpus analysis -- and showed how they may be addressed in a computational framework to successfully plan the presentation of complex descriptions that include examples. The contributions of this thesis are:

- the synthesis of results and ideas from different fields on the generation and presentation of good examples for learning and understanding;
- the identification and analysis of the different ways in which examples and text influence each other (deletion and addition of text under specific circumstances);
- the specification of the different factors that are important in the context of natural language generation (the position of the examples, the type of examples, prompts, etc.);
- a new and improved categorization of example types that takes into account the context of the examples;
- the finding that interesting negative examples are not only useful, but can affect the choice of the positive examples;

---

The let-form consists of a left parenthesis followed by the word LET followed by a list of local variables followed by a number of forms. Finally, there is a right parenthesis. A local variable is specified as a list of the variable name which is a symbol and an initial value. Examples of let-forms are:

```
(LET ((ORANGES FISHES)) MEN)
(LET ((BICYCLES 3) (PIZZAS 'MEN)) 2 9 CARS)
(LET ((YELLOW SKY) (FISHES BLUE)) (MEN AARDVARKS))
(LET ((APPLES APPLES) (FISHES SHARKS)) ((MEN CARS) (MEN BLUE)))
```

Figure 10.1: Explanation of a let-form planned by the system.

---

- the identification of the differences between descriptions (in the BNF-documentation domain) generated for introductory texts and advanced texts;
- a validation of these claims by implementation of a system to generate such descriptions;
- an empirical evaluation of the cognitive effectiveness of some of the heuristics developed in the thesis.

## 10.2 Limitations of the Work

There are some issues that we did not address in this work. One of these was the generation of descriptions for intermediate texts (intended for users between the introductory, naive users and the advanced, expert users): such descriptions (and the associated examples) are very 'use' oriented, i.e., they illustrate different ways in which the concept could be made use of. For instance, in the case of a list, the typical descriptions seen are about how lists can be used to associate names and phone numbers, write functions, etc. For the system to be able to generate descriptions of this sort, the representation of the concept would have to include its typical uses, along with examples of each use.

Perhaps the greatest limitation of this thesis was this lack of a semantic representation for the constructs. This lack of semantic representation prevented us from generating not only intermediate texts, but also from generating meaningful descriptions of constructs such as loop and let forms. Such a representation was not explored in this thesis, which looked at the generation of descriptions and examples of only the syntactic form from an underlying representation that was generated almost automatically from the BNF representation. The issue of representing the semantics is, however, a problem of knowledge representation; given the appropriate knowledge of the semantics, the system would be able to take the knowledge into account and generate suitable descriptions.<sup>1</sup>

Some of the problems this caused our system can be seen in the descriptions for the let-form shown in Figure 10.1. The fact that the BNF form does not specify that the variables declared initially in the let-form are usually then used in the body of the let-form causes the system to generate examples of let-forms that reflect this lack of knowledge. The last example also shows how this lack of semantic representation can cause the system to generate a syntactically correct, but semantically incorrect example where the unbound variable 'apples' is assigned its own undefined value. Such problems

---

<sup>1</sup>One of the goals of EES was to design a knowledge representation scheme for precisely this reason: explainability. It has a sophisticated and complex representation for actions, operators, their effects, etc. In the current implementation, we have attempted to generate descriptions at the purely syntactic level to see how useful such descriptions may be without extensively representing each construct in the system.

are compounded in the case of a the description for a function-form (described in Appendix D), where the parameters, the keyword arguments and the optional arguments have different implications on their presence or absence which is not recognized in the BNF specification. To a lesser extent, the same problem affects the system in generating examples of a list: examples of lists in our corpus were of the form (BLUE SKY), (GREEN GRASS), or (3 FRENCH FRIES). Since there is no representation of the relationship between each of the elements, the examples generated by the system do not emulate these naturally occurring examples.

These shortcomings on the part of the current implementation can be overcome if the semantics of the constructs and the relationship between the different parts of these constructs are represented in the system. The semantics would need to be represented using a language that both the text planner and the example generator would be able to understand and reason with during the planning process. Such a representation could also be augmented with stereotypical uses of the constructs; this would allow the system to generate intermediate texts with examples.

Another aspect that we did not address in depth in this thesis was the issue of generating descriptions of relations and processes; only concept descriptions were considered here. There are many similarities and some differences between descriptions generated about concepts and descriptions about relations and processes. Many of the issues raised earlier, such as determining the number of examples, determining critical and variable features, sequencing based on example complexity, integration with the textual description, etc. remain the same. However, the *examples* themselves generated for relations and processes are different from those of concepts. For instance, in the case of relations, the examples are not of the relation itself, but consist of  $n$ -tuples of instances, where  $n$  is the arity of the relation, and the instances are objects between which the relation holds. Thus, to generate such examples, the system must first generate examples for the different concepts that the relation exists between; such examples (for each concept) would need to follow all of the issues presented in this thesis, such as that of complexity, sequencing, prompts, etc. Each example for the relation would then need to be evaluated in terms of complexity, critical features, etc. in terms of the relation definition, as well as the examples of the different constituent concepts. Similarly, 'process-examples' are also quite different from 'concept-examples' and 'relation-examples', because each process-example can require the presentation of a number of relation-examples, thus compounding the issues that need be considered.

The thesis did not address any issues relating to the lexical choice or phrasing in this work. The thesis also did not touch the issues of either formatting or the presentation of graphical examples (pictures or diagrams). Each of these issues is a very complicated one, and is currently not considered by the system.

Perhaps one of the most important limitations of this thesis was the application domain used: programming languages. While all of the issues described in Chapter 3 on the integration of examples with text remain valid in other domains as well, the heuristics on determining the relative complexity of an element and finding interesting negative examples will no longer be applicable. Also, the differences between introductory and advanced texts will almost certainly be different in other domains.

## 10.3 Future Work

Future directions in which this work can be extended to include all of the current limitations. In addition, there are other promising areas in which this work can be extended:

- *Critiquing*: There are many similarities between explanation generation and critiquing: they both involve explaining aspects of the system to the user in natural language. However, there are also many differences between an explanation and a critique. For instance, while an explanation

can be blunt and 'to the point,' a critique must be phrased very differently, so that it plays up the positive aspects of the user's solution, and tactfully suggests better alternatives for the incorrect aspects of the solution.

Presenting counter examples for the weak points (or gaps) in the solution could help convince the user more effectively than just a plain statement. The WEST system, with its pre-enumerated examples, was very successful in its critic's role in mathematics. The example generator would need to generate good counter-examples.

- *Knowledge Acquisition:* An interesting extension of such a system would be in the application area of knowledge acquisition. Should the system's internal representation be faulty or incomplete, the explanations generated by the system will also be faulty or incomplete. Such gaps and inconsistencies are much more easily noticeable in the form of a wrong example than in a text. Given that the discourse structure represents the relationship of the example to the text and the internal representation, it should be possible for the system to modify the knowledge representation based on the user's input about a faulty example. There are at least three advantages of using explanations with examples over plain text explanations in knowledge acquisition: (i) given that there are multiple examples are presented for each feature, an indication of a faulty example can be much more precise (and helpful to the system) than finding that a fault with the feature in general; (ii) no additional parsing capability on the part of the system is required, beyond a means of indicating a faulty example; (iii) should the system desire further elaborations, it can generate other, single featured examples for clarification.
- *Multi-media Generation:* There are many similarities between examples and pictures as parts of an overall explanation: (i) they are both 'atomic,' i.e., when an example is constructed in response to a goal posted by the text planner, the example cannot be further sub-divided, just like a diagram cannot be split beyond a certain point; (ii) co-references between the accompanying explanation and the example/picture can be done in different ways (for instance, by generating prompts in both cases); (iii) the effect on the explanation of both the example and the picture must be explicitly considered by the system *during* the discourse planning process. Other similarities lie in the fact that certain features can be highlighted by presenting two identical pictures, with the feature to be highlighted being the only difference. Much of the reasoning (if sequence of pictures, what order of presentation, etc) in multi-media generation and example presentation is very related.
- *Presenting Analogies and Examples:* There are many similarities in the presentation of analogies and examples in natural language explanations. The discourse structure can be used in both cases to partition the set of features to try and find suitable analogies for presentation.<sup>2</sup> Analogies are more open-ended than examples, and there are many other issues that will need to be considered if they are to be incorporated. However, the framework would remain essentially the same.

There are many interesting implications about the application that result from explicitly reasoning about the examples and the explanation. The areas described above represent some of the applications in which the results from this work could be applied and evaluated.

---

<sup>2</sup>An initial attempt to make use of analogies in explanation using this framework can be seen in (Mittal and Paris, 1992).

## Reference List

- Abrahams *et al.*, 1990 Paul W. Abrahams, Karl Berry, and Kathryn A. Hargreaves. *T<sub>E</sub>X for the Impatient*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1990.
- Aleven and Ashley, 1992 Vincent Aleven and Kevin D. Ashley. Automated Generation of Examples for a Tutorial in Case-Based Argumentation. In *Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Intelligent Tutoring Systems (ITS-92)*, Montreal, Canada, 1992.
- Anderson and Matessa, 1990 J. R. Anderson and M. Matessa. A Rational Analysis of Categorization. In Bruce W. Porter and Raymond J. Mooney, editors, *Proceedings of the Seventh International Conference on Machine Learning*, Austin, TX, 1990.
- Anderson *et al.*, 1980 John R. Anderson, P. J. ... and C. M. Beasley. Complex Learning Processes. In R. E. Snow, P. A. Frederico, and W. E. ... editors, *Aptitude, Learning and Instruction*. Lawrence Erlbaum Publishers, Hillsdale, N.J., 1980.
- Anderson, 1987 John R. Anderson. Skill acquisition: Compilation of weak-method problem solutions. *Psychological Review*, 94:192--210, 1987.
- Angluin, 1987 Dana Angluin. Queries and Concept Learning. *Machine Learning*, 2(4):319--342, 1987.
- Ashley and Aleven, 1992 Kevin Ashley and Vincent Aleven. Generating Dialectical Examples Automatically. In *Proceedings of the Tenth National Conference on Artificial Intelligence (AAAI-92)*, pages 654--660, San Jose, CA., 1992. American Association for Artificial Intelligence.
- Ashley, 1991 Kevin D. Ashley. Reasoning with cases and hypotheticals in HYPO. *International Journal of Man-Machine Studies*, 34(6):753--796, June 1991.
- Bateman and Paris, 1989 John A. Bateman and Cecile L. Paris. Phrasing a Text in Terms the User Can Understand. In *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Joint Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, Detroit, Michigan, 1989.
- Baxter, 1989 Rohan Baxter. SETTER: An Algebraic Problem Generator. Honors Thesis, Department of Computer Science, Monash University, Australia, October 1989.
- Beard and Calamars, 1983 Richard E. Beard and Peter V. Calamars. A Method for Designing Computer Support Documentation. Master's thesis, Department of Communication, AFIT/LSH, WPAFB, Ohio 45433, September 1983.
- Bell and Evans, 1989 Paula Bell and Charlotte Evans. *Mastering Documentation*. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., 1989.
- Biber, 1988 Douglas Biber. *Variation across speech and writing*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, England, 1988.
- Biber, 1989 Douglas Biber. A typology of English Texts. *Linguistics*, 27:3--43, 1989.
- Borde, 1992 Arvind Borde. *T<sub>E</sub>X by Example*. Academic Press, Boston, 1992.

- Braswell, 1989 Frank Merritt Braswell. *Inside Postscript*. Peachpit Press, Mobile, AL, 1989.
- Brockmann, 1986 R. John Brockmann. *Writing Better Computer User Documentation: From Paper to Online*. John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1986.
- Brockmann, 1990 R. John Brockmann. *Writing Better Computer User Documentation: From Paper to Hypertext*. John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1990.
- Bruner, 1966 Jerome S. Bruner. *Toward a Theory of Instruction*. Oxford University Press, London, U.K., 1966.
- Burton and Brown, 1982 Richard R. Burton and John Seely Brown. An Investigation of Computer Coaching for Informal Learning Activities. In Derek Sleeman and John Seely Brown, editors, *Intelligent Tutoring Systems*, chapter 4, pages 79--98. Academic Press, Inc., 1982.
- Carnine and Becker, 1982 Douglas W. Carnine and Wesley C. Becker. Theory of Instruction: Generalisation Issues. *Educational Psychology*, 2(3--4):249--262, 1982.
- Carnine, 1980a Douglas W. Carnine. Three Procedures for Presenting Minimally Different Positive and Negative Instances. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 72(4):452--456, 1980.
- Carnine, 1980b Douglas W. Carnine. Two Letter Discrimination Sequences: High-Confusion-Alternatives First versus Low-Confusion-Alternatives First. *Journal of Reading Behaviour*, XII(1):41--47, Spring 1980.
- Chandler and Sweller, 1991 Paul Chandler and John Sweller. Cognitive Load Theory and the Format of Instruction. *Cognition and Instruction*, 8(4):292--332, 1991.
- Charney *et al.*, 1988 Davida H. Charney, Lynne M. Reder, and Gail W. Wells. Studies of Elaboration in Instructional Texts. In Stephen Doheny-Farina, editor, *Effective Documentation: What we have learned from Research*, chapter 3, pages 48--72. The MIT Press, Cambridge, MA., 1988.
- Charniak *et al.*, 1987 Eugene Charniak, Christopher K. Riesbeck, Drew V. McDermott, and James R. Meehan. *Artificial Intelligence Programming*. Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Publishers, Hillsdale, N.J., 1987.
- Chi *et al.*, 1989 Michelene T. H. Chi, Miriam Bassok, Matthew W. Lewis, Peter Reimann, and Robert Glaser. Self-Explanations: How Students Study and Use Examples in Learning to Solve Problems. *Cognitive Science*, 13(2):145--182, April-June 1989.
- Chinell, 1990 David F. Chinell. *System Documentation: The In-Line Approach*. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., 1990.
- Clark, 1971 D. C. Clark. Teaching Concepts in the Classroom: A Set of Prescriptions derived from Experimental Research. *Journal of Educational Psychology Monograph*, 62:253--278, 1971.
- Cook, 1989 Diane J. Cook. ANAGRAM: An Analogical Planning System. Technical Report UIUCDCS-R-89-1561, Department of Computer Science, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, December 1989.
- Cooper and Clancey, 1982 Doug Cooper and Michael Clancey. *Oh! Pascal!* W. W. Norton and Co., New York, 1982.
- Crandall, 1987 Judith A. Crandall. *How to Write Tutorial Documentation*. Prentice Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1987.
- de Beaugrande, 1980 Robert de Beaugrande. *Text, Discourse and Process*. Ablex Publishing Corporation, 1980.

- de Cervantes, 1981 Miguel de Cervantes. *Don Quixote de la Mancha*. Translated [1700--1703] by Peter Anthony Motteux, Modern Giant Library edition, 1981.
- DeJong and Mooney, 1986 Gerald F. DeJong and Raymond F. Mooney. Explanation-based learning: An alternative view. *Machine Learning*, 1:145--176, 1986.
- Doheny-Farina, 1988 Stephen Doheny-Farina, editor. *Effective Documentation: What we have learned from Research*. The MIT Press series in information systems. MIT Press, 1988.
- Doyle and Patil, 1991 Jon Doyle and Ramesh S. Patil. Two theses of Knowledge Representation: Language restrictions, taxonomic classification, and the utility of representation devices. *Artificial Intelligence*, 48:261--297, 1991.
- Duffy *et al.*, 1983 T. M. Duffy, T. E. Curran, and D. Sass. Documentation Design for Technical Job Tasks. *Human Factors*, 25(2):143--160, 1983.
- Duin, 1990 Ann Hill Duin. Computer Documentation -- Centering on the Learner. *Journal of Computer-Based Instruction*, 17(2):73--78, Spring 1990.
- Engelmann and Carnine, 1982 Siegfried Engelmann and Douglas Carnine. *Theory of Instruction: Principles and Applications*. Irvington Publishers, Inc., New York, 1982.
- Feldman and Klausmeier, 1974 Katherine Voerwerk Feldman and Herbert J. Klausmeier. The effects of two kinds of definitions on the concept attainment of fourth- and eighth-grade students. *Journal of Educational Research*, 67(5):219--223, January 1974.
- Feldman, 1972 Katherine Voerwerk Feldman. The effects of the number of positive and negative instances, concept definitions, and emphasis of relevant attributes on the attainment of mathematical concepts. In *Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the American Educational Research Association*, Chicago, Illinois, 1972.
- Fikes and Nilsson, 1990 Richard E. Fikes and Nils J. Nilsson. STRIPS: A New Approach to the Application of Theorem Proving to Problem Solving. In James Allen, James Hendler, and Austin Tate, editors, *Readings in Planning*, pages 88 -- 98. Morgan Kaufmann Publishers, Inc., San Mateo, CA, 1990.
- Frasson and Gauthier, 1990 Claude Frasson and Gilles Gauthier, editors. *Intelligent Tutoring Systems: At the Crossroads of Artificial Intelligence and Education*. Ablex Publishing Corporation, Norwood, N.J., 1990.
- Frederiksen, 1984 Norman Frederiksen. Implications of Cognitive Theory for Instruction in Problem Solving. *Journal of the Review of Educational Research*, 54(3):363--407, Fall 1984.
- Friedman and Fellesisen, 1987 Daniel P. Friedman and Matthias Fellesisen. *The Little LISP*. MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, 1987.
- Gick and Holyoak, 1980 Mary L. Gick and Keith J. Holyoak. Analogical Problem Solving. *Cognitive Psychology*, 12:306--355, 1980.
- Gillingham, 1988 Mark G. Gillingham. Text in Computer-Based Instruction: What the Research Says. *Journal of Computer-Based Instruction*, 15(1):1--6, Winter 1988.
- Giora, 1988 Rachel Giora. On the informativeness requirement. *Journal of Pragmatics*, 12:547--565, 1988.
- Gold, 1965 E. Mark Gold. *Models of Goal-Seeking and Learning*. PhD thesis, University of California, Los Angeles, CA., January 1965.
- Gold, 1967 E. Mark Gold. Language Identification in the Limit. *Information and Control*, 10:447--474, 1967.

- Greenwald, 1984 John Greenwald. How does this %\$! Thing Work? *Time*, June 1984. (Page 64, Week of June 18, 1984).
- Hammond, 1990 Kristian J. Hammond. Explaining and Repairing Plans that Fail. *Artificial Intelligence*, 45(1-2):173 -- 229, September 1990.
- Harbison and Steele, 1993 Samuel P. Harbison and Guy L. Steele. *C: A Reference Manual*. Prentice Hall, 1993.
- Hastings and King, 1986 G. Prentice Hastings and Kathryn J. King. *Creating Effective Documentation for Computer Programs*. Prentice-Hall, 1986.
- Holland *et al.*, 1987 John H. Holland, Keith J. Holyoak, Richard E. Nisbett, and Paul R. Thagard. *Induction: Processes of Inference, Learning and Discovery*. Computational Models of Cognition and Perception. The MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, 1987.
- Horton, 1991 William K. Horton. *Illustrating Computer Documentation: The Art of Presenting Information Graphically and Online*. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, 1991.
- Houtz *et al.*, 1973 John C. Houtz, J. William Moore, and J. Kent Davis. Effects of Different Types of Positive and Negative Examples in Learning "non-dimensioned" Concepts. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 64(2):206--211, 1973.
- Hovy and Meteor, 1990 Eduard Hovy and Marie Meteor, editors. *Proceedings of the AAAI Workshop on Evaluating Natural Language Generators*. AAAI, Boston, MA, 1990.
- Hovy *et al.*, 1992 Eduard H. Hovy, Julia L. Lavid, Elisabeth Maier, Vibhu O. Mittal, and Cecile L. Paris. Employing Knowledge Resources in a New Text Planner Architecture. In Robert Dale, Eduard Hovy, Dietmar Rosner, and Oliviero Stock, editors, *Aspects of Automated Natural Language Generation*, pages 57--73. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1992.
- Kambhampati, 1990a Subbarao Kambhampati. A Theory of Plan Modification. In *Proceedings of the Eighth National Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 177--182, Boston, MA, July 1990.
- Kambhampati, 1990b Subbarao Kambhampati. Mapping and Retrieval During Plan Reuse: A Validation Structure Based Approach. In *Proceedings of the Eighth National Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 170--176, Boston, MA, July 1990.
- Keene, 1989 Sonya E. Keene. *Object-Oriented Programming in Common Lisp*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Reading, MA, 1989.
- Kerpedjiev, 1993 Stephan Kerpedjiev. Personal communication, June 1993. At the NOAA (National Weather Service), Boulder, CO. Currently writing documentation for DATA-MAP, a software package to present multi-media weather forecasts.
- Klausmeier and Feldman, 1975 Herbert J. Klausmeier and Katherine Voerwerk Feldman. Effects of a Definition and a Varying Number of Examples and Non-Examples on Concept Attainment. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 67(2):174--178, 1975.
- Klausmeier *et al.*, 1974 Herbert J. Klausmeier, E. S. Ghatala, and D. A. Frayer. *Conceptual Learning and Development, a Cognitive View*. Academic Press, New York, 1974.
- Klausmeier, 1976 Herbert J. Klausmeier. Instructional Design and the Teaching of Concepts. In J. R. Levin and V. L. Allen, editors, *Cognitive Learning in Children*. Academic Press, New York, 1976.
- Knuth, 1979 Donald E. Knuth. *T<sub>E</sub>X and MetaFont: New Directions in Typesetting*. Digital Press, Bedford, MA, 1979.
- Knuth, 1990 Donald E. Knuth. *The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Reading, MA, 1990.

- Kozma, 1991 Robert B. Kozma. The Impact of Computer-Based Tools and Embedded Prompts on Writing Processes and Products of Novice and Advanced College Writers. *Cognition and Instruction*, 8(1):1--27, 1991.
- Kukich, 1983 Karen Kukich. *Knowledge-Based Report Generation: A Knowledge-Engineering Approach to Natural Language Report Generation*. PhD thesis, University of Pittsburgh, 1983.
- LeFevre and Dixon, 1986 Jo-Anne LeFevre and Peter Dixon. Do Written Instructions Need Examples? *Cognition and Instruction*, 3(1):1--30, 1986.
- Ling, 1991 Xiaofeng Ling. Inductive Learning from Good Examples. In *Proceedings of the Twelfth International Joint Conference on Artificial Intelligence (IJCAI 91)*, pages 751--756, Sydney, Australia, August 1991.
- Litchfield *et al.*, 1990 Brenda C. Litchfield, Marcy P. Driscoll, and John V. Dempsey. Presentation Sequence and Example Difficulty: Their Effect on Concept and Rule Learning in Computer-Based Instruction. *Journal of Computer-Based Instruction*, 17(1):35--40, Winter 1990.
- London, 1992 Robert London. Student Modeling to Support Multiple Instructional Approaches. *User Modeling and User-Adapted Interaction*, 2(1-2):117--154, 1992.
- Lucid, 1990 Inc. Lucid. Lucid Advanced User's Guide. Hewlett-Packard Documentation for version 4.2, 1990.
- MacGregor, 1988 Robert MacGregor. A Deductive Pattern Matcher. In *Proceedings of the 1988 Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, St Paul, Mn, August 1988. American Association of Artificial Intelligence.
- MacGregor, 1991 Robert MacGregor. The Evolving Technology of Classification-Based Knowledge Representation Systems. In John Sowa, editor, *Principles of Semantic Networks: Explorations in the Representation of Knowledge*. Morgan Kaufmann, San Mateo, California, 1991.
- MacLachlan, 1986 James MacLachlan. Psychologically Based Techniques for Improving Learning within Computerized Tutorials. *Journal of Computer-Based Instruction*, 13(3):65--70, Summer 1986.
- Mann and Thompson, 1988 William C. Mann and Sandra A. Thompson. Rhetorical Structure Theory: Towards a Functional Theory of Text Organization. *Text*, 8:243--281, 1988.
- Markle and Tiemann, 1969 S. M. Markle and P. W. Tiemann. *Really Understanding Concepts*. Stipes Press, Urbana, Illinois, 1969.
- Maynard, 1982 John Maynard. A User-Driven Approach to Better Manuals. *IEEE Transactions on Professional Communication*, PC-25(41):216--219, March 1982.
- McCarthy *et al.*, 1985 John McCarthy, Paul W. Abrahams, Daniel J. Edwards, Timothy P. Hart, and Michael I. Levin. *LISP 1.5 Programmer's Manual*. The MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, 1985.
- McGilton and Campione, 1992 Henry McGilton and Mary Campione. *Postscript by Example*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Reading, MA, 1992.
- Meehan, 1979 James R. Meehan, editor. *UCI Lisp Manual*. Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Hillsdale, NJ, 1979.
- Mellish and Evans, 1989 Chris Mellish and Roger Evans. Natural Language Generation from Plans. *Journal of Computational Linguistics*, 15(4):233 -- 249, December 1989.
- Merrill and Tennyson, 1977 M. David Merrill and Robert D. Tennyson. *Concept Teaching: An Instructional Design Guide*. Educational Technology, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1977.

- Merrill and Tennyson, 1978 M. David Merrill and Robert D. Tennyson. Concept Classification and Classification Errors as a function of Relationships between Examples and Non-Examples. *Improving Human Performance Quarterly*, 7(4):351--364, Winter 1978.
- Michalski, 1983 Ryszard S. Michalski. A Theory and Methodology of Inductive Learning. In R. S. Michalski, J. G. Carbonell, and T. M. Mitchell, editors, *Machine Learning: An Artificial Intelligence Approach*. Tioga Press, Palo Alto, CA, 1983.
- Michener, 1977 Edwina Rissland Michener. *Epistemology, Representation, Understanding and Interactive Exploration of Mathematical Theories*. PhD thesis, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA., February 1977.
- Michener, 1978 Edwina Rissland Michener. Understanding Understanding Mathematics. *Cognitive Science Journal*, 2(4):361--383, 1978.
- Mitchell *et al.*, 1983 Tom M. Mitchell, Paul E. Utgoff, and Ranan Banerji. Learning by Experimentation: Acquiring and Refining Problem-Solving Heuristics. In Ryszard S. Michalski, Jaime G. Carbonell, and Tom M. Mitchell, editors, *Machine Learning: An Artificial Intelligence Approach*, chapter 6, pages 163--189. Tioga Publishing Co., Palo Alto, CA, 1983.
- Mitchell *et al.*, 1986 Tom M. Mitchell, Richard M. Keller, and Smadar T. Kedar-Cabelli. Explanation-Based Generalization: A Unifying View. *Machine Learning*, 1:48--80, 1986.
- Mittal and Paris, 1992 Vibhu O. Mittal and Cecile L. Paris. Finding and Using Analogies in Generating Natural Language Object Descriptions. In *Proceedings of the Fourteenth Annual Conference of The Cognitive Science Society*, pages 996--1002, Indianapolis, IN., August 1992. Lawrence Erlbaum, Inc.
- Moore and Paris, 1988 Johanna D. Moore and Cecile L. Paris. Constructing Coherent Texts Using Rhetorical Relations. In *Proceedings of the Tenth Annual Conference of the Cognitive Science Society*. Cognitive Science Society, August 1988.
- Moore and Paris, 1989 Johanna D. Moore and Cecile L. Paris. Planning text for advisory dialogues. In *Proceedings of the Twenty-Seventh Annual Meeting of the Association for Computational Linguistics*, pages 203 -- 211, Vancouver, British Columbia, June 1989.
- Moore and Paris, 1992 Johanna D. Moore and Cecile L. Paris. Exploiting User Feedback to Compensate for the Unreliability of User Models. *User Model and User Adapted Interaction Journal*, 2(4), 1992. (Authors in alphabetical order).
- Moore and Paris, 1993 Johanna D. Moore and Cecile L. Paris. Planning Text for Advisory Dialogues: Capturing Intentional, and Rhetorical Information. To appear in *Computational Linguistics*, 1993.
- Moore and Swartout, 1989 Johanna D. Moore and William R. Swartout. A Reactive Approach to Explanation. In *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 1505--1510, Detroit, MI, August 1989. IJCAI.
- Moore, 1986 Joseph Moore. Direct Instruction: A Model of Instructional Design. *Educational Psychology*, 6(3):201--229, 1986.
- Moore, 1989 Johanna D. Moore. *A Reactive Approach to Explanation in Expert and Advice-Giving Systems*. PhD thesis, University of California -- Los Angeles, 1989.
- Morgan, 1980 Chris Morgan. "What's wrong with technical writing today?". *BYTE*, 7(12):294, December 1980.
- Mostow, 1989 Jack Mostow. Design by Derivational Analogy: Issues in the Automated Replay of Design Plans. *Artificial Intelligence Journal*, 40:119--184, September 1989.

- Neches *et al.*, 1985 Robert Neches, William Swartout, and Johanna Moore. Enhanced Maintenance and Explanation of Expert Systems through explicit models of their development. *IEEE Transactions on Software Engineering*, SE-11(11), November 1985.
- Norman, 1988 Donald Norman. *The Psychology of Everyday Things*. Basic Books, New York, 1988.
- Norvig, 1992 Peter Norvig. *Paradigms of Artificial Intelligence Programming*. Morgan Kaufmann Publishers, San Mateo, CA, 1992.
- Novak Jr., 1985 Gordon S. Novak Jr. Lisp Programming Lecture Notes. Technical Report AI-TR-85-06, Artificial Intelligence Laboratory, The University of Texas at Austin, 1985.
- Nwana, 1991 Hyacinth S. Nwana. User Modelling and User Adapted Interaction in an Intelligent Tutoring System. *User Modeling and User-Adapted Interaction*, 1(1):1-32, 1991.
- Pakin and Associates, Inc., 1984 Sandra Pakin and Associates, Inc. *Documentation Development Methodology: Techniques for Improved Communications*. Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1984.
- Paris, 1988 Cecile L. Paris. Tailoring Object Descriptions to the User's Level of Expertise. *Computational Linguistics*, 14(3):64-78, September 1988.
- Paris, 1991 Cecile L. Paris. Generation and Explanation: Building an Explanation Facility for the Explainable Expert Systems Framework. In C. Paris, W. Swartout, and W. Mann, editors, *Natural Language Generation in Artificial Intelligence and Computational Linguistics*, pages 49 -- 81. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London, 1991.
- Paris, 1993 Cecile L. Paris. *User Modelling in Text Generation*. Pinter Publishers, London, 1993.
- Park and Tennyson, 1980 Ok-Choon Park and Robert D. Tennyson. Adaptive Design Strategies for Selecting Number and Presentation Order of Examples in Coordinate Concept Acquisition. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 72(3):362-370, 1980.
- Park and Tennyson, 1986 Ok-Choon Park and Robert D. Tennyson. Computer-Based Response-Sensitive Design Strategies for Selecting Presentation Form and Sequence of Examples in Learning of Coordinate Concepts. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 78(2):153-158, 1986.
- Patil, 1993 Ramesh S. Patil. Personal communication, July 1993.
- Perry, 1992 Greg Perry. *C by Example*. McGraw Press: Osborne, 1992.
- Pirolli and Anderson, 1985 Peter L. Pirolli and John R. Anderson. The Role of Learning from Examples in the Acquisition of Recursive Programming Skills. *Canadian Journal of Psychology*, 39:240-272, 1985.
- Pirolli, 1991 Peter Pirolli. Effects of Examples and Their Explanations in a Lesson on Recursion: A Production System Analysis. *Cognition and Instruction*, 8(3):207-259, 1991.
- Polya, 1945 G. Polya. *How to Solve it -- A New Aspect of Mathematical Method*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, New Jersey, 1945.
- Polya, 1973 George Polya. *Induction and Analogy in Mathematics*, volume 1 of *Mathematics and Plausible Reasoning*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., 1973.
- Reder *et al.*, 1986 Lynne M. Reder, Davida H. Charney, and Kim I. Morgan. The Role of Elaborations in Learning a Skill from an Instructional Text. *Memory and Cognition*, 14(1):64-78, 1986.
- Reed *et al.*, 1974 S. K. Reed, G. W. Ernst, and R. Banerji. The Role of Analogy in Transfer between Similar Problem States. *Cognitive Psychology*, 6:436-450, 1974.

- Reed *et al.*, 1985 S. K. Reed, A. Dempster, and M. Ettinger. Usefulness of Analogous Solutions for Solving Algebra Word Problems. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Learning, Memory and Cognition*, 11:106--125, 1985.
- Reiser *et al.*, 1985 Brian J. Reiser, John R. Anderson, and Robert G. Farrell. Dynamic Student Modelling in an Intelligent Tutor for Lisp Programming. In *Proceedings of the Ninth International Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 8--14. IJCAI-85 (Los Angeles), 1985.
- Rissland and Ashley, 1986 Edwina L. Rissland and Kevin D. Ashley. Hypotheticals as Heuristic Device. In *Proceedings of the National Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 289--297. AAAI, 1986.
- Rissland and Soloway, 1980 Edwina L. Rissland and Elliot M. Soloway. Overview of an Example Generation System. In *Proceedings of the National Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 256--258. AAAI, 1980.
- Rissland *et al.*, 1984 Edwina L. Rissland, Eduardo M. Valcarce, and Kevin D. Ashley. Explaining and Arguing with Examples. In *Proceedings of the National Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 288--294. AAAI, August 1984.
- Rissland, 1978 Edwina L. Rissland. The Structure of Mathematical Knowledge. Technical Report 472, Massachusetts Institute of Technology -- Artificial Intelligence Laboratory, Cambridge, MA., August 1978.
- Rissland, 1980 Edwina L. Rissland. Example Generation. In *Proceedings of the Third National Conference of the Canadian Society for Computational Studies of Intelligence*, pages 280--288. CIPS, Toronto, Ontario, May 1980.
- Rissland, 1981 Edwina L. Rissland. Constrained Example Generation. COINS Technical Report 81-24, Department of Computer and Information Science, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, MA., 1981.
- Rissland, 1983 Edwina L. Rissland. Examples in Legal Reasoning: Legal Hypotheticals. In *Proceedings of the International Joint Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 90--93, Karlsruhe, Germany, 1983. IJCAI.
- Rivest and Sloan, 1988 Ron L. Rivest and Robert Sloan. Learning Complicated Concepts Reliably and Usefully. In *Proceedings of the Workshop on Computational Learning Theory*, Pittsburgh, PA, 1988.
- UNIX Documentation, 1986 UNIX Documentation. UNIX User's Reference Manual 4.3 Berkeley Software Distribution. Computer Systems Research Group, Computer Science Division, University of California, Berkeley, CA, 1986.
- Schank and Riesbeck, 1981 Roger C. Schank and Christopher K. Riesbeck. *Inside Computer Understanding: Five Programs plus miniatures*. Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Hillsdale, NJ, 1981.
- Shapiro, 1986 Stuart C. Shapiro. *LISP: An Interactive Approach*. Computer Science Press, Rockville, MD., 1986.
- Simpson and Casey, 1988 Henry Simpson and Steven M. Casey. *Developing Effective User Documentation: A Human Factors Approach*. McGraw-Hill, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1988.
- Sleeman and Brown, 1982 Derek Sleeman and John Seely Brown, editors. *Intelligent Tutoring Systems*. Academic Press, Inc., 1982.
- Stanfill and Waltz, 1986 Craig Stanfill and David Waltz. Toward Memory-Based Reasoning. *Communications of the ACM*, 29(12):1213 -- 1228, December 1986.
- Steele Jr., 1984 Guy L. Steele Jr. *Common Lisp: The Language*. Digital Press, 1984.

- Stevens, 1990 W. Richard Stevens. *UNIX: Network Programming*. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1990.
- Stuart, 1984 Ann Stuart. *Writing and Analyzing Effective Computer System Documentation*. Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, 1984.
- Suthers and Rissland, 1988 Daniel D. Suthers and Edwina L. Rissland. Constraint Manipulation for Example Generation. COINS Technical Report 88-71, Computer and Information Science, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, MA., 1988.
- Swartout and Smoliar, 1987 William Swartout and Stephen Smoliar. Explaining the link between causal reasoning and expert behaviour. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on Computer Applications in Medical Care*, Washington, DC., November 1987. Also to appear in "Topics in Medical Artificial Intelligence"; Miller, P.L. (ed), Springer-Verlag.
- Swartout *et al.*, 1992 William R. Swartout, Cecile L. Paris, and Johanna D. Moore. Design for Explainable Expert Systems. *IEEE Expert*, 6(3):58--64, 1992.
- Sweller and Cooper, 1985 John Sweller and Graham A. Cooper. The Use of Worked Examples as a Substitute for Problem Solving in Learning Algebra. *Cognition and Instruction*, 2(1):59--89, 1985.
- Tatar, 1987 Deborah G. Tatar. *A Programmer's Guide to COMMON LISP*. Digital Press, 1987.
- Tennyson and Park, 1980 Robert D. Tennyson and Ok-Choon Park. The Teaching of Concepts: A Review of Instructional Design Research Literature. *Review of Educational Research*, 50(1):55--70, Spring 1980.
- Tennyson and Tennyson, 1975 Robert D. Tennyson and C. L. Tennyson. Rule Acquisition Design Strategy Variables: Degree of Instance Divergence, Sequence and Instance Analysis. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 67:852--859, 1975.
- Tennyson *et al.*, 1972 Robert D. Tennyson, F. R. Wooley, and M. David Merrill. Exemplar and Non-Exemplar Variables which Produce Correct Classification Behaviour and Specified Classification Errors. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 63:144--162, 1972.
- Tennyson *et al.*, 1975 Robert D. Tennyson, M. Steve, and R. Boutwell. Instance Sequence and Analysis of Instance Attribute Representation in Concept Acquisition. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 67:821--827, 1975.
- Tennyson *et al.*, 1981 R. D. Tennyson, J. N. Chao, and J. Youngers. Concept Learning Effectiveness Using Prototype and Skill Development Presentation Forms. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 73:326--334, 1981.
- Tennyson *et al.*, 1983 R. D. Tennyson, J. Youngers, and P. Suebsonthi. Concept Learning by Children using Instructional Presentation Forms for Prototype Formation and Classification Skill Development. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 75:280--291, 1983.
- Tinker, 1963 M. A. Tinker. *Legibility of Print*. Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa, 1963.
- Touretzky, 1984 David S. Touretzky. *LISP: A Gentle Introduction to Symbolic Computation*. Harper & Row Publishers, New York, 1984.
- Trimble, 1985 Louis Trimble. *English for Science and Technology. A Discourse Approach*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1985.
- Valiant, 1984 Leslie G. Valiant. A Theory of the Learnable. *Communications of the ACM*, 27:1134--1142, 1984.
- VanLehn, 1987 Kurt VanLehn. Learning One Subprocedure per Lesson. *Artificial Intelligence*, 31(1):1--40, January 1987.

- Veloso and Carbonell, 1990 Manuela M. Veloso and Jaime G. Carbonell. Derivational Analogy in PRODIGY: Automating Case Acquisition, Storage and Utilization. Working Manuscript, School for Computer Science, Carnegie-Mellon University, 1990.
- Vetterling *et al.*, 1990 William T. Vetterling, William H. Press, Saul A. Teukolsky, and Brian P. Flannery. *Numerical Recipes Example Book (C)*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, MA, 1990.
- Waite *et al.*, 1983 Mitchell Waite, Donald Martin, and Stephen Prata. *UNIX Primer Plus*. Howard W. Sams and Co., Inc., Indianapolis, IN, 1983.
- Ward and Sweller, 1990 Mark Ward and John Sweller. Structuring Effective Worked Examples. *Cognition and Instruction*, 7(1):1 -- 39, 1990.
- Werth, 1984 Paul Werth. *Focus, Coherence and Emphasis*. Croom Helm, London, England, 1984.
- Wile, 1987 David S. Wile. *POPART: Producer of Parsers and Related Tools -- System Builders' Manual*. USC/Information Sciences Institute, Marina del Rey, CA 90282, 1987.
- Wilensky, 1983 Robert Wilensky. *Planning and Understanding: A Computational Approach to Human Reasoning*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Reading, Massachusetts, 1983.
- Wilensky, 1986 Robert Wilensky. *Common LISPcraft*. W. W. Norton and Co., New York, 1986.
- Williams, 1977 P. W. Williams. Quote from the Comptroller-General of the United States. New Scientist, December 1977.
- Willows and Houghton, 1987a Dale M. Willows and Harvey A. Houghton, editors. *The Psychology of Illustration*, volume 1. (Basic Research). Springer-Verlag, New York, 1987.
- Willows and Houghton, 1987b Dale M. Willows and Harvey A. Houghton, editors. *The Psychology of Illustration*, volume 2. (Instructional Issues). Springer-Verlag, New York, 1987.
- Winston and Horn, 1984 Patrick Henry Winston and Berthold Klaus Paul Horn. *LISP*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1984.
- Winston *et al.*, 1983 Patrick H. Winston, Thomas O. Binford, Boris Katz, and Michael Lowry. Learning Physical Description from Functional Definitions, Examples and Precedents. Technical Report STAN-CS-82-950, Artificial Intelligence Laboratory, Stanford University, January 1983. Also numbered AIM-349.
- Winston, 1975 Patrick Henry Winston. Learning Structural Descriptions from Examples. In Patrick Henry Winston, editor, *The Psychology of Computer Vision*, chapter 5, pages 158--209. McGraw Hill, New York, 1975.
- Woolf and McDonald, 1984a Beverly Woolf and David D. McDonald. Building a Computer Tutor: Design Issues. *IEEE Computer*, pages 61--73, September 1984.
- Woolf and McDonald, 1984b Beverly Woolf and David D. McDonald. Context-Dependent Transitions in Tutoring Discourse. In *Proceedings of the Third National Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 355--361. AAAI, 1984.
- Woolf and Murray, 1987 Beverly Woolf and Tom Murray. A Framework for Representing Tutorial Discourse. In *Proceedings of the Tenth International Joint Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, pages 189--192. IJCAI, 1987.
- Woolf *et al.*, 1988 Beverly Park Woolf, Daniel Suthers, and Tom Murray. Discourse Control for Tutoring: Case Studies in Example Generation. COINS Technical Report 88-49, Computer and Information Science, University of Massachusetts, 1988.

- Woolf, 1991 Beverly Park Woolf. Representing, Acquiring, and Reasoning about Tutoring Knowledge. In R. Lewis and S. Otsuki, editors, *Advanced Research on Computers in Education*, pages 39--48. Elsevier Science Publishers B.V. (North-Holland), 1991.
- Yoder, 1986 Cornelia Marie Yoder. *An Expert System for Providing On-Line Information Based Upon Knowledge of Individual User Characteristics*. PhD thesis, Syracuse University, August 1986.
- Zhu and Simon, 1987 Xinming Zhu and Herbert A. Simon. Learning Mathematics from Examples and by Doing. *Cognition and Instruction*, 4(3):137--166, 1987.

## Appendix A

### Descriptions of a list in different books

We present seven descriptions of a list in LISP from various books, and point out some of the positive and negative aspects of each of them.

#### A.1 Description 1

[ Discussion on the LISP language deleted ]

Now we are ready to perform an operation in LISP. LISP accepts commands in a somewhat different form from most calculators. First, we begin with a parenthesis. Next, we specify the name of the operation we would like to perform. Then we give the arguments we would like to use. We finish off the whole thing with a final parenthesis. For example, if we want to compute "8 + 3" using LISP, we type the following:

```
--> (+ 8 3)
11
```

[ Description of arithmetic operators and prefix notation deleted ]

For example, if we want to multiply 8 by 3, we can type:

```
--> (* 8 3)
24
```

LISP programmers sometimes call these commands *s-expressions*.

[ Description of LISP's suitability for symbolic computation deleted ]

The symbolic expressions given above are also called lists. A list is a sequence of objects inside a pair of parentheses.

From (Wilensky, 1986), page3.

**Analysis:** This description of a list does not introduce the concept before presenting examples. It presents examples of arithmetic operations that happen to be lists, and then uses them to illustrate its definition of a list. The definition itself is not well integrated with the examples, since the two

examples occur on two (successive) pages, and the definition occurs two paragraphs after the second example.

## A.2 Description 2

LISP data-structures are called *s-expressions*. An s-expression is:

1. a number, e.g., 15, written as an optional plus or minus sign, followed by one or more digits.
2. a symbol, e.g., FOO, written as a letter followed by zero or more letters or digits.
3. a string, e.g., "This is a string", written as a double quote, followed by zero or more characters, followed by another double quote.
4. a character, e.g., #  
q, written as a sharp sign, followed by another backslash, followed by a character.
5. a list of s-expressions, e.g., (A B) or (IS TALL (FATHER BILL)), written as a left parenthesis, followed by zero or more s-expressions, followed by a right parenthesis.

From (Charniak *et al.*, 1987), page 2.

**Analysis:** This description of a list presents two examples of a list before the definition. Both the examples contain only symbols. The second example contains a sub-list, but that is not explained or mentioned in the explanation.

## A.3 Description 3

S-Expressions (*symbolic expressions*): these are defined recursively as follows:

- An atom is an S-Expression
- If  $x_1 \dots x_n$  are S-Expressions, then  $(x_1 \dots x_n)$ , called a list of  $x_1 \dots x_n$ , is an S-Expression

Examples:

```
(ONTOGENY)
(THIS IS A LIST)
(* PI (EXPT R 2))
(ALL X (IF (MAN X) (MORTAL X)))
()      ((( )))      ((( ) ) ( ))
```

The empty list, () is equivalent to the special atom NIL.

**Analysis:** This description of a list occurs as part of a description of an S-Expression. There are a number of examples following the definition. The first two examples illustrate the variability in number of data elements, and the others illustrate the variability in the type of data elements. The

examples do not illustrate one feature at a time (the third example illustrates that elements can be characters or lists, in addition to symbols, but there is no prompt). The fifth example contains three lists in one line, of an empty list and combinations of empty lists. The order of presentation of the examples is not in terms of complexity -- the empty list should have been presented first.

## A.4 Description 4

The most common kind of S-Expression is the list. A definition of a list is: *A left parenthesis followed by zero or more S-Expressions followed by a right parenthesis is a list.* Of course lists, as well as atoms, are themselves S-expressions, so (A (B C) D) is a list as well as (A B C D). We refer to the S-expressions in a list as *elements* or *members* of the list. The most important list is the one with no members -- ( ), called the *empty list* or the *null list*. Some more lists are shown below:

```
( )
(ATOM)
(ALPHA BETA GAMMA)
(5 IS A NUMBER
 "THIS IS A STRING")
((A LIST WITHIN A LIST))
( ( ) )
(((( ( )))) )
(AN (INTERESTING
 ((LIST) STRUCTURE)))
```

From (Shapiro, 1986), page 8.

**Analysis:** This description presents two examples of relatively complex lists with the definition. After some elaboration, more examples of lists are presented. These examples are well structured and in order of increasing complexity. The third example introduces two new data types, and there is no prompt for the recursive case.

## A.5 Description 5

A list looks like a sequence of objects, without commas between them, enclosed in parentheses:

```
(tables chairs lamps bookcases)
```

The parentheses identify a unit, and that unit can be used for a variety of purposes. In fact, lists provide both a primary way of storing data and the means for defining and calling functions.

A list can have any number and kind of elements, including other lists. A list can be as deeply nested as you wish. A list can also have no elements, in which case it is represented as NIL, and may be written as "( )" or "NIL". These two forms are completely interchangeable. NIL is a special symbol, whose print name is "NIL" and whose value is always NIL. Table 2-2 contains simple lists made up of kinds of elements you have already seen. Lists can also combine different kinds of elements, as shown in Table 2-3.

These lists can be considered ways to store data. For example, you might want to store your inventory as a list, or group together names and phone numbers in a list of lists. Appropriately constructed lists

can also be used to call functions in LISP. If you type any of the lists in Table 2-4 to LISP, you will get an appropriate response.

[15 lines on using lists as functions deleted here]

**TABLE 2-2.** Some possible lists:

(1 2 3 4 5)	a list of numbers
(A B C D)	a list of symbols
(*\A *\B *\C *\D)	a list of characters
(this is a list)	a list of symbols

**TABLE 2-3.** More complex lists:

(this is (also) a list)	a list whose third element is a list
((12 eggs (large)) (1 bread (whole wheat)) (4 pizzas (frozen with anchovies)))	a list of lists of numbers, symbols and lists
("this is a string in a list" -53)	a list of a string and a number
((beth "555-5834") (pat "555-8098"))	a list containing two lists

**TABLE 2-4.** Lists that can be used to call functions:

(SQRT 2)	a list whose first element is the name of a function
(+ 2 3)	a list whose first element is the name of a function
(- 6 5 4)	a list whose first element is the name of a function

From (Tatar, 1987), page 16.

**Analysis:** The examples presented in this description are collected into groups of four (so even though the total number of examples is more than four (Clark's (1971) *maxim*), they are partitioned into smaller groups). They are ordered by complexity. They also contain prompts about the features being illustrated in the examples. Only the second example in the second group of more complex examples is out of sequence. In the third table, the examples are again ordered by complexity (the number of elements increases). This is a very good description of a list for naive users. Its only drawback is that the examples themselves are not well integrated within the text; however, the text refers to them explicitly.

## A.6 Description 6

When left and right parentheses surround something, we call the result a *list*, and speak of its *elements*. In our very first example, the list (+ 3.14 2.71) has three elements, +, 3.14, and 2.71.

[Discussion on the prefix notation deleted]

- Indivisible things like 27, 3.14 and +, as well as things like FOO, B27 and HYPHENATED-SYMBOL are called *atoms*.
- Atoms like 27 and 3.14 are called *numeric atoms*, or numbers.

- Atoms like FOO, B27, HYPHENATED-SYMBOL, FIRST and + are called *symbolic atoms*, or symbols.
- A *list* consists of a left parenthesis, followed by zero or more atoms or lists, followed by a right parenthesis.

From (Winston and Horn, 1984), page 20.

**Analysis:** This description does not order the examples in terms of complexity. There are very few examples and they do not illustrate many of the features of a list at all.

## A.7 Description 7

A list always begins with a left parenthesis. Then come zero or more pieces of data (called the elements of a list) and a right parenthesis. Some examples of lists are:

```
(AARDVARK)
(RED YELLOW GREEN BLUE)
(2 3 5 11 19)
(3 FRENCH FRIES)
```

A list may contain other lists as elements. Given the three lists:

```
(BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH)
```

we can make a list by combining them all with a parentheses.

```
((BLUE SKY) (GREEN GRASS) (BROWN EARTH))
```

From (Touretzky, 1984), page 35.

**Analysis:** This description presents the definition, followed by examples illustrating the variable features of a list. The recursive example is prefaced by additional explanation, and the examples are very well integrated with the text.

## **Appendix B**

### **The Heuristics used in the System**

There are a number of heuristics used in the system to decide on different decisions. Many of these heuristics depend upon the text type being generated. Since the current implementation does not handle intermediate texts, the heuristics listed here deal only with the introductory and the advanced texts:

- **when should an example be generated:**
  - if the text is introductory, and the concept definition has been presented, generate examples to illustrate the definition
  - if the text is advanced, examples should not be presented until the complete description of the concept has been presented textually
- **information in text, examples, and both text and examples:**
  - if the text type is introductory:
    - \* the definition of the concept must be described textually
    - \* information on different types of elements in a concept can be conveyed using only examples
    - \* information on recursive element types (such as lists of other lists) must be conveyed through both text and examples
  - if the text type is advanced:
    - \* all of the information should be communicated in the text
    - \* the syntactic information can be conveyed through examples as well (but there is no replacement of textual elaboration by the examples)
- **characteristics of the textual explanation:**
  - if the text is introductory:
    - \* the textual explanation should be about the syntactic construction
    - \* anomalous cases should not be introduced in the explanation
  - If the text is advanced, the textual explanation must be complete with regard to all the information represented about the concept.
- **characteristics of the examples:**
  - if the text is introductory:
    - \* the examples should introduce one feature at a time

- \* the elements of the examples should be simple ones
- \* anomalous examples should not be presented along with other positive examples
- \* if an interesting negative example is available, the example should be presented, (along with an explanation of the differences between the negative example and the positive ones)
- \* positive examples which differ in a variable feature should be presented to illustrate that variable feature
- \* if a positive-negative pair of examples is presented to illustrate a critical feature, then the example pair should differ in only the critical feature
- if the text is advanced:
  - \* the examples should contain as many features as possible
  - \* the elements of the examples can be as complex as necessary to illustrate the range of variation
  - \* since the definition is complete, there should be no anomalous examples in this context). Negative examples are not presented
- **number of examples:**
  - if the text is introductory
    - \* the number of examples should be at least as many as the number of features to be introduced
    - \* if a recursive example needs to be presented, then there should be background examples that should be generated in addition for use in the recursive example
  - if the text is advanced, the number of examples is determined by the minimum number of examples that convey all the features. To illustrate variable features, at least two examples should be presented, in which all of the variable features should be varied
- **order of example presentation:** examples should be presented ordered by complexity at both the feature level and the individual example level.
  - *ordering groups of examples illustrating a feature:* groups of examples illustrating a particular feature should be sequenced by the relative complexity of that feature
  - *ordering examples within each feature group:*
    - \* within a group, the examples should be ordered by the complexity of each example
    - \* between positive-negative pairs, the positive example should be presented before the negative example
    - \* if the negative example is an interesting negative example of another concept, then the positive negative pair should be presented after all the other regular (not anomalous) examples
    - \* anomalous examples should be presented after all other examples (including interesting negative examples).
- **position of the examples:**
  - if the text type is introductory, the examples illustrating a feature in a concept should be presented as part of the elaboration on that feature (after the feature is mentioned). This will result in examples interspersed within the explanation
  - if the text type is advanced, all examples should be presented after the complete explanation
- **when should prompts be generated:**
  - prompts should be generated when the example to be presented has more features than required by the discourse goal that caused the example to be generated

- prompts should be generated when the example occurs far away from the point that the concept the example illustrates was described
- prompts should be generated if the example is as a result of combining two communicative goals
- if the text type is advanced and the example is recursive, prompts should be generated to mention that fact

## Appendix C

### The Text Plan Operators

```
;;; This operator is applicable when the object to be described is a noun. It
;;; retrieves the appropriate features based on the text type, and posts two
;;; goals, one to list the features, and another to elaborate upon each of
;;; them. This elaboration can be either in text or using examples.
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-noun
  :effect (bel hearer (noun ?object))
  :constraints (and
    (isa? ?object noun)
    (get-text-type-for-object ?text-type ?object)
    (get-appropriate-ftrs-for-user ?ftrs ?object ?text-type)
    (not *use-examples-only*))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (list-ftrs ?ftrs ?object))
  :satellites (((foreach ?ftrs (elaboration ?ftrs ?object)) *optional*)))
```

```
;;; The following two operators are used to present sequences of examples for
;;; a particular object. The constraints retrieve all of the features based
;;; on the text type, and filter them into critical and variable
;;; features. These are then sorted by complexity and the operator posts
;;; goals to present examples for the critical and variable
;;; features. Depending upon which one (critical vs. variable) features have
;;; greater complexity, the goals are ordered appropriately.
```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-noun-examples
  :effect (bel hearer (noun ?object))
  :constraints (and
    (isa? ?object noun)
    (get-text-type-for-object ?text-type ?object)
    (get-appropriate-ftrs-for-user ?ftrs ?object ?text-type)
    (select-critical-ftrs ?crit-ftrs ?ftrs ?object)
    (enumerate-ftrs ?ex-crit-ftrs ?crit-ftrs ?object)
    (order-by-complexity ?eg-crit-ftrs ?ex-crit-ftrs)
    (select-variable-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?ftrs ?object)
    (enumerate-ftrs ?ex-var-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?object)
    (order-by-complexity ?eg-var-ftrs ?ex-var-ftrs)
    (complexity-greater ?eg-var-ftrs ?eg-crit-ftrs)
    *use-examples-only*)
  :nucleus ((foreach ?eg-var-ftrs (bel hearer (example-seq ?eg-var-ftrs ?object)))
    (foreach ?eg-crit-ftrs (bel hearer (example-pair ?eg-crit-ftrs ?object))))
  :satellites (((background (present-eg-background ?object))
    *optional*)))

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-noun-examples
  :effect (bel hearer (noun ?object))
  :constraints (and
    (isa? ?object noun)
    (get-text-type-for-object ?text-type ?object)
    (get-appropriate-ftrs-for-user ?ftrs ?object ?text-type)
    (select-critical-ftrs ?crit-ftrs ?ftrs ?object)
    (enumerate-ftrs ?ex-crit-ftrs ?crit-ftrs ?object)
    (order-by-complexity ?eg-crit-ftrs ?ex-crit-ftrs)
    (select-variable-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?ftrs ?object)
    (enumerate-ftrs ?ex-var-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?object)
    (order-by-complexity ?eg-var-ftrs ?ex-var-ftrs)
    (complexity-greater ?eg-crit-ftrs ?eg-var-ftrs)
    *use-examples-only*)
  :nucleus ((foreach ?eg-crit-ftrs (bel hearer (example-pair ?eg-crit-ftrs ?object)))
    (foreach ?eg-var-ftrs (bel hearer (example-seq ?eg-var-ftrs ?object))))
  :satellites (((background (present-eg-background ?object)) *optional*)))

```

;;; This operator generates the appropriate background string to introduce an  
 ;;; example.

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name generate-initial-example-string
  :effect (background (present-eg-background ?object))
  :constraints nil
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (example-background ?object))
  :satellites nil
)

```

```
;;; This operator is used to generate a pair of positive negative examples to
;;; highlight a critical feature of an object.
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name example-crit-ftr
  :effect (bel hearer (example-pair ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (not *use-text-only*)
  :nucleus ((bel hearer (example ?ftr ?object)))
  :satellites (((sequence (bel hearer (neg-example ?ftr ?object))))))
```

```
;;; This operator generates examples to illustrate a variable feature of an
;;; object
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name example-var-ftr
  :effect (bel hearer (example-seq ?var-ftr ?object))
  :constraints (enumerate-ftrs ?eg-ftrs ?var-ftr ?object)
  :nucleus (foreach ?eg-ftrs (bel hearer (example ?var-ftr ?object)))
  :satellites nil)
```

```
;;; This operator presents a negative example in which a prompt is not
;;; required
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name generate-negative-example
  :effect (sequence (bel hearer (neg-example ?ftr ?object)))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (get-neg-example ?example ?ftr ?object)
                    (not (prompt-required? ?example ?ftr ?object)))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (present-neg-example ?example))
  :satellites nil)
```

```
;;; This operator presents a negative example in which a prompt is required
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name generate-negative-example-w-prompt
  :effect (sequence (bel hearer (neg-example ?ftr ?object)))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (get-neg-example ?example ?ftr ?object)
                    (prompt-required? ?example ?ftr ?object))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (present-neg-example ?example))
  :satellites (((sequence (neg-example-prompt ?ftr ?object)) *optional*)))
```

```
;;; This operator generates a positive example in which a prompt is not
;;; required
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name generate-actual-example
  :effect (bel hearer (example ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (get-example ?example ?ftr ?object)
                    (not (prompt-required? ?example ?ftr ?object)))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (present-example ?example))
  :satellites nil)
```

```
;;; This operator generates a positive example in which a prompt is required
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name generate-actual-example-w-prompt
  :effect (bel hearer (example ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (get-example ?example ?ftr ?object)
                    (prompt-required? ?example ?ftr ?object))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (present-example ?example))
  :satellites (((sequence (example-prompt ?ftr ?object)) *optional*)))
```

```
;;; Generates prompts of the form: "An example of a list"
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name example-prompt
  :effect (sequence (example-prompt ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (single-ftr? ?ftr))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (prompt ?object))
  :satellites nil)
```

```
;;; Generates prompts of the form: "A list of atoms, numbers and strings"
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name example-prompt-detailed
  :effect (sequence (example-prompt ?ftrs ?object))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (multiple-ftrs? ?ftrs))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (prompt ?object ?ftrs))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Generates prompts for negative examples: "This is not a list"

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name neg-example-prompt
  :effect (sequence (neg-example-prompt ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (isa? ?object noun)
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (neg-prompt ?object))
  :satellites nil
)
```

;;; Generates background text and examples for recursive examples. It checks  
;;; if the text being generated is introductory, and gets its sub-components,  
;;; filters the fixed features and after ordering them by complexity, posts  
;;; goals to introduce each of the background features.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name set-up-eg-background
  :effect (bel hearer (set-up-background-for-eg ?ftr ?eg-ftrs ?object))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (get-text-type-for-object ?text-type ?object)
                    (introductory-text? ?text-type)
                    (get-sub-components ?sub-ftrs ?ftr ?object)
                    (filter-fixed-ftrs ?eg-ftrs ?sub-ftrs ?user-type)
                    (order-by-complexity ?bkg-ftrs ?eg-ftrs))
  :nucleus (foreach ?bkg-ftrs
                (bel hearer (example-of-ftr ?bkg-ftrs ?object)))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Generates an example if not a recursive or an anomalous case. The plan  
;;; operator accesses the discourse structure to find out whether the example  
;;; is anomalous in this context or not.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name ftr-eg-simple-case
  :effect (bel hearer (example-of-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (not (recursive-ftr? ?ftr ?object))
                    (not (anomalous-ftr? ?ftr ?object)))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (generate-eg-for-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :satellites nil)
```

```
;;; Generates an example in a complex case, by presenting the background
;;; before presenting the actual example.
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name ftr-eg-complex-case
  :effect (bel hearer (example-of-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (or
    (recursive-ftr? ?ftr ?object)
    (anomalous-ftr? ?ftr ?object))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (generate-eg-for-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :satellites (((background (present-info ?ftr ?object))))))
```

```
;;; Plan operator to handle the generation of multiple examples for multiple
;;; features
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name ftr-eg-complex-case-many-ftr
  :effect (bel hearer (example-of-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and
    (multiple-ftrs? ?ftr)
    (get-text-type-for-object ?text-type ?object)
    (introductory-text? ?text-type))
  :nucleus (foreach ?ftr (bel hearer (generate-eg-for-ftr ?ftr ?object)))
  :satellites nil)
```

```
;;; Plan operator to handle the generation of one example for multiple
;;; features
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name ftr-eg-complex-case-many-ftr
  :effect (bel hearer (example-of-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and
    (multiple-ftrs? ?ftr)
    (get-text-type-for-object ?text-type ?object)
    (reference-text? ?text-type))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (generate-eg-for-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Plan operator to handle the case of a single recursive feature

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name ftr-eg-complex-case
  :effect (bel hearer (example-of-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (recursive-ftr? ?ftr ?object)
                    (single-ftr? ?ftr))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (generate-eg-for-rec-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :satellites (((background (present-rec-info ?ftr ?object)))))
```

;;; Plan operator to handle the generation of background textual information  
;;; in the case of a recursive feature.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name background-information-recursive-case
  :effect (background (present-rec-info ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (recursive-ftr? ?ftr ?object)
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (recursive-case ?ftr ?object))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Plan operator to handle the construction of a complex example from other  
;;; simpler examples.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name ftr-eg-complex-case
  :effect (bel hearer (generate-eg-for-rec-ftr ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (simple-cases ?s-cases ?ftr ?object)
                    (build-complex-eg ?complex-eg ?s-cases ?object))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (complex-eg ?complex-eg ?object))
  :satellites (((background (present-egs ?s-cases ?object)))))
```

;;; Plan operator to present the background examples for a recursive example

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name background-egs-recursive
  :effect (background (present-egs ?s-cases ?object))
  :constraints nil
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (simple-egs ?s-cases ?object))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Plan operator to list multiple features of an object

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name list-many-features
  :effect (bel hearer (list-ftrs ?ftrs ?object))
  :constraints (and (multiple-ftrs? ?ftrs)
                    (get-first-ftr ?f-ftr ?ftrs)
                    (get-rest-ftrs ?r-ftrs ?ftrs)
                    (not *use-examples-only*))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (list-ftrs ?f-ftr ?object))
  :satellites (((sequence ?r-ftrs ?object) *required*)))
```

;;; Plan operator to list a single feature of an object

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name list-single-feature
  :effect (bel hearer (list-ftrs ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (single-ftr? ?ftr)
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (ftr ?object ?ftr))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Plan operator to describe a feature as one in a list of features

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-sequence-of-features
  :effect (sequence ?ftrs ?object)
  :constraints (and (multiple-ftrs? ?ftrs)
                    (get-first-ftr ?f-ftr ?ftrs)
                    (get-rest-ftrs ?r-ftrs ?ftrs))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (list-ftrs ?f-ftr ?object))
  :satellites (((sequence ?r-ftrs ?object) *required*)))
```

;;; Plan operator to describe the last of the features in a list of features

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-last-of-a-sequence-of-features
  :effect (sequence ?ftrs ?object)
  :constraints (single-ftr? ?ftrs)
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (ftr ?object ?ftrs))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Plan operator to elaborate upon the attributes of an object

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaborate-on-attributes
  :effect (elaboration ?ftrs ?object)
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (elaboratable-features? ?ftrs ?props)
                    *use-text-only*)
  :nucleus (bel hearer (describe-attributes ?ftrs ?props))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Plan operator to elaborate on the variable features of an object

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaborate-var-ftrs-using-eg
  :effect (elaboration ?property ?object)
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (get-variable-ftrs ?var-ftrs ?property ?object)
                    (order-by-complexity ?variable-ftrs ?var-ftrs)
                    *use-examples-and-text*)
  :nucleus (foreach ?variable-ftrs
                (bel hearer (describe-a-ftr-using-eg ?variable-ftrs ?object)))
  :satellites (((background (for-eg ?property ?object)) *optional*)))
```

;;; Elaborate upon the attributes in text

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name attributes-text
  :effect (bel hearer (describe-attributes ?object ?ftrs))
  :constraints (and *use-text-only*)
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (attributes ?object ?ftrs))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Plan operator to generate background text for the examples.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name background-example-text
  :effect (background (example-prompt ?object))
  :constraints (and *use-examples-and-text*)
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (background-to-examples ?object))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Elaborate upon the attributes using examples.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name attributes-examples
  :effect (bel hearer (describe-attributes ?object ?ftrs))
  :constraints (and *use-examples-and-text*
                    (multiple-ftrs? ?ftrs))
  :nucleus (foreach ?ftrs (bel hearer (example ?ftrs ?object)))
  :satellites (((background (example-prompt ?object)) *optional*)))
```

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-a-feature-using-an-eg
  :effect (bel hearer (describe-a-ftr-using-eg ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (enumerate-ftrs ?eg-ftrs ?ftr ?object))
  :nucleus (foreach ?eg-ftrs
              (bel hearer (example-of-ftr ?eg-ftrs ?object)))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Describe a variable feature using examples

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-var-feature-using-eg
  :effect (bel hearer (describe-a-ftr-using-eg ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (variable-ftr? ?ftr ?object)
                    (instantiate-ftr-values ?exmpl-ftrs ?ftr ?object)
                    (order-by-complexity ?eg-ftrs ?exmpl-ftrs))
  :nucleus (foreach ?eg-ftrs
              (bel hearer (example-of-ftr ?eg-ftrs ?object)))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Describe a critical feature using examples

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-crit-feature-using-eg
  :effect (bel hearer (describe-a-ftr-using-eg ?ftr ?object))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?object noun)
                    (critical-ftr? ?ftr ?object)
                    (instantiate-ftr-values ?exmpl-ftrs ?ftr ?object)
                    (order-by-complexity ?eg-ftrs ?exmpl-ftrs))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (example-pair ?eg-ftrs ?object))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; Present the definition of a concept and optionally elaborate upon it.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-object
  :effect (bel hearer (concept ?concept))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?concept penman-kb::object))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (definition ?concept))
  :satellites (((elaboration ?concept) *optional*)))
```

;;; This plan operator elaborates upon the attributes of a concept.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaboration-object-attribute
  :effect (elaboration ?concept)
  :constraints (attributes ?concept ?attributes)
  :nucleus (bel hearer (ref (attributes ?concept) ?attr))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; This plan operator is used to describe the elements of a set.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaboration-object
  :effect (elaboration ?concept)
  :constraints (set-elements ?concept ?elements)
  :nucleus (bel hearer (ref (individuals ?concept) ?elements))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; This plan operator is used to describe a disjoint covering.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaboration-object
  :effect (elaboration ?concept)
  :constraints (covering-subtypes ?concept ?subtypes)
  :nucleus (bel hearer (ref (subtypes ?concept) ?subtypes))
  :satellites nil)
```

;;; This plan operator is used to describe the different part-subparts of a  
;;; concept.

```
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaboration-object
  :effect (elaboration ?concept)
  :constraints (parts ?concept ?parts)
  :nucleus (bel hearer (ref (parts ?concept) ?parts))
  :satellites nil)
```

```

;;; This plan operator is used to elaborate upon a disjoint covering of a
;;; concept and orders them by the maxim of end-weight before listing them and
;;; elaborating upon them.

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaboration-on-set-covering
  :effect (bel hearer (ref (individuals ?concept) ?elements))
  :constraints (disjoint-covering? ?concept ?elements)
  :nucleus ((setq ?d-j (apply-maxim-of-end-weight ?elements))
    (inform hearer (disjoint-covering ?concept ?d-j)))
  :satellites (((foreach ?d-j (bel hearer (concept ?d-j))) *optional*)))

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-object-with-disjoint-covering
  :effect (bel hearer (concept ?concept))
  :constraints (and (isa? ?concept penman-kb::object)
    (disjoint-covering ?concept ?d-c))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (disjoint-covering ?concept ?d-c))
  :satellites nil)

```

```

;;; This plan operator is used to describe a concept in terms of its
;;; superclass by presenting the superclass and then the differences. The
;;; constraints check to see that the superclass has not already been
;;; presented previously.

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name define-superclass-w-diffs
  :effect (bel hearer (definition ?concept))
  :constraints (and (all-superclass ?concept ?super-concepts)
    (appropriate ?super-concepts ?appropriate-super-concepts)
    (not (in-explanation-context
      (bel hearer (concept ?appropriate-super-concepts)))))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (class-ascription ?concept ?appropriate-super-concepts))
  :satellites (((setq ?diff (get-defining-attributes ?concept ?super-concepts))
    ((elaboration-object-attribute
      (ref (defining-attributes-wrt-super ?concept) ?diff))
      *required-when-present*)))

```

```

;;; if the superclass has been presented earlier, then this plan operator is
;;; selected. It does not describe the superclass again, but only the
;;; differences.

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name define-superclass-w-diffs
  :effect (bel hearer (definition ?concept))
  :constraints (and (not (and (all-superclass ?concept ?super-concepts)
                              (appropriate ?super-concepts ?appropriate-super-concepts)
                              (in-explanation-context
                               (bel hearer (concept ?appropriate-super-concepts))))))
              (differences ?diff ?concept ?super-concepts))
  :nucleus (forall ?diff
            (bel hearer (ref (defining-attributes-wrt-super ?concept) ?diff)))
  :satellites nil)

```

;;; Plan Operator used to describe a value restriction using an example

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaborate-object-value-restriction-attribute-with-example
  :effect (bel hearer (ref (defining-attributes ?concept) ?filler))
  :constraints (and (value-restriction ?filler ?restriction-value))
  :nucleus ((setq ?role-restricted (get-role-restricted ?filler))
            (setq ?features-to-appear-in-eg
                  (get-features ?restriction-value ?role-restricted ?concept
                                *user-model* *explanation-context*))
            (setq ?features-only-in-eg
                  (get-features-for-eg ?features-to-appear-in-eg ?role-restricted ?concept
                                *user-model* *explanation-context*))
            (setq ?features-in-text (filter-out ?restriction-value ?features-only-in-eg))
            (inform s hearer (?restriction-type ?role-restricted ?features-in-text)))
  :satellites (((elaboration-by-example ?features-to-appear-in-eg
                                         ?role-restricted ?concept))))

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name generate-the-actual-example-multiple-critical-features
  :effect (bel hearer (example-features ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted))
  :constraints (not (single-critical-ftr? ?ftrs))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (example ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted))
  :satellites (((background (pos-example ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted)) *optional*)))

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name generate-the-actual-example-single-critical-feature
  :effect (bel hearer (example-features ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted))
  :constraints (and (single-critical-itr? ?ftrs)
                    (interesting-neg-example? ?neg-example-concept
                                                ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted)
                    (get-differences ?neg-example-concept ?concept ?differences))
  :nucleus (bel hearer (example ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted))
  :satellites (((background (pos-example ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted)) *optional*)
                ((contrast (example ?neg-example-concept ?concept ?role-restricted)))
                ((evidence (differences ?concept ?neg-example-concept ?differences)))))

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name contrast-with-neg-example
  :effect (contrast (example ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted))
  :constraints (get-neg-example ?neg-example ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted
                                *explanation-context*)
  :nucleus (bel hearer (example ?neg-example ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted))
  :satellites nil)

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name generate-example-prompt
  :effect (elaborate-with-prompt (example-prompt ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted))
  :constraints (prompt? *explanation-context*)
  :nucleus ((setq ?prompt-itr (get-prompt-ftrs ?ftrs ?concept ?role-restricted))
            (inform (prompt ?prompt-itr)))
  :satellites nil)

```

```

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaborate-object-number-restriction-attribute
  :effect (bel hearer (ref (defining-attributes-wrt-super ?concept) ?filler))
  :constraints (and (number-restriction? ?filler))
  :nucleus ((setq ?restriction-type (get-restriction-type ?filler))
            (setq ?number-restriction (get-number-restriction ?restriction-type ?filler))
            (setq ?role-restricted (get-role-restricted ?filler))
            (inform s hearer (?restriction-type ?number-restriction ?role-restricted)))
  :satellites nil)

```

```

;;; Plan Operator to elaborate upon an attribute
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaborate
  :effect (elaboration-object-attribute ?concept ?diff)
  :constraints nil
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (attribute ?concept ?diff))
  :satellites nil)

;;; Plan operator to elaborate upon an object restriction
(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaborate-object-restriction-attribute
  :effect (elaboration-object-attribute ?object ?filler)
  :constraints (and (get-restriction-type restriction-type ?filler)
                    (get-role-restricted role-restricted ?filler)
                    (get-restriction-value restriction-value ?filler))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (?restriction-type ?role-restricted
                             ?restriction-value))
  :satellites nil)

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name elaborate-object-number-restriction-attribute
  :effect (elaboration-object-attribute ?object ?filler)
  :constraints (and
    (get-restriction-type restriction-type ?filler)
    (number-restriction? ?restriction-type ?filler)
    (get-number-restriction number-restriction ?filler)
    (get-role-restricted ?role-restricted ?filler))
  :nucleus (inform s hearer (?restriction-type ?number-restriction
                             ?role-restricted))
  :satellites nil)

(define-text-plan-operator
  :name describe-defining-attributes
  :effect (elaboration-object-attribute (ref (defining-attributes ?concept) ?diff))
  :constraints nil
  :nucleus (foreach ?diff
    (bel hearer (ref (defining-attributes ?concept) ?diff)))
  :satellites nil)

```

## Appendix D

### Descriptions in the LISP domain planned by the system

This appendix contains the concept descriptions that were planned by the system. These descriptions were selected at random from the LISP domain rather than the INTEND domain since the LISP descriptions presented here can be compared with naturally occurring texts on LISP to gain some idea of the system's strengths and limitations. As we have stated earlier (in Section 9.3), the current implementation does not have the semantics of the construct represented; this results in an inability to generate useful examples where the semantics are required. However, the current implementation does reason explicitly about the effects of the examples on the discourse, and effects such as the positioning of the examples, the order of presentation of the examples, etc. are taken into account.

Most of the descriptions given here are relatively straightforward. These descriptions suggest both the range and the limitations of the current implementation. They do not contain the typical uses of the function forms, nor give examples of what these forms might return if they executed (that could have been represented manually as an annotation, but was not). Some of these forms also display how the lack of a semantic representation can cause the generation of erroneous examples: for instance, the description of the REDUCE function resulted in two of the four examples being wrong.

---

#### The cons-form:

The construct CONS consists of a left parenthesis followed by the word CONS followed by a data element. Then there is a list and finally a right parenthesis. For example:

```
(CONS 'ORANGES '(PIZZAS APPLES CARS))
```

```
(CONS '2 '(PIZZAS APPLES CARS))
```

```
(CONS '(A B) '(PIZZAS APPLES CARS))
```

```
(CONS '(A B) '(3 PIZZAS 5 APPLES))
```

---

#### The car-form:

The construct CAR consists of a left parenthesis followed by the word CAR followed by a list followed by a right parenthesis. For example:

```
(CAR '(ORANGES MONKEYS CARS))
```

```
(CAR '(2 6 1 5 6))  
(CAR '(ORANGES 2 CARS 6))  
(CAR '((ORANGES ORANGES) (CARS MONKEYS)))
```

---

### **The cdr-form:**

The construct CDR consists of a left parenthesis followed by the word CAR followed by a list followed by a right parenthesis. For example:

```
(CDR '(FISHES CARS APPLES CARS))  
(CDR '(3 5 6))  
(CDR '(MEN 7 CARS 7))  
(CDR '((FISHES MEN) (ORANGES CARS)))
```

---

### **The function-form:**

The function form consists of a left parenthesis followed by the word DEFUN followed by a function name which is a symbol followed by a parameter list which is a list of symbols. Then there is a body which consists of zero or more s-expressions, followed by a right parenthesis. For example:

```
(DEFUN ORANGES (MEN CATS PIZZAS)  
  FISHES)  
(DEFUN CARS (ORANGES FISHES)  
  5)  
(DEFUN FISHES (ORANGES MEN)  
  (MEN CARS CARS))
```

The parameter list can have optional and keyword parameters in it. Optional parameters are specified by the word &OPTIONAL. For example:

```
(DEFUN FISHES (&OPTIONAL CARS)  
  MEN)  
(DEFUN CARS (&OPTIONAL MEN PLANES CARS FISHES)  
  PLANES)
```

Keyword parameters are specified by the word &KEY. For example:

```
(DEFUN FISHES (&KEY PLANES)  
  CARS)  
(DEFUN MONKEYS (&KEY MEN CARS ORANGES APPLES)  
  PLANES)
```

The parameter list can have both optional and keyword parameters. For example:

```
(DEFUN APPLES (&OPTIONAL ORANGES &KEY GRAPES)
  MONKEYS)
```

---

### The prog-form:

The prog-form consists of a left parenthesis followed by the word PROG followed by a list of variables. There are some forms after the list of variables. Finally there is a right parenthesis. For example:

```
(prog (oranges) fishes aardvarks)
(prog (men blue) 2 3 4 5)
(prog (cars women apples) oranges 6 apples 7)
(prog (yellow fishes) (fishes men planes))
```

---

### Constants:

A constant-form consists of either T, NIL, a number, or a quoted s-expression. For example:

```
T
NIL
5
'(fishes men)
'oranges
```

However, the following example is not a constant, but a variable because there is no quote:

```
oranges
```

The difference between a variable and a constant is that the value of a constant cannot be changed.

---

### The append-form:

The append form consists of a left-parenthesis followed by the word APPEND followed by two lists. Finally there is a right parenthesis. For example:

```
(append '(oranges fishes) '(cars bananas))
(append '(1 3 5 7) '(cars planes))
(append '(oranges 3 men 5) '(fishes men cars))
(append '((cars men) (pizzas women)) '(aardvarks))
```

---

### The reduce-form:

The reduce-form consists of a left parenthesis followed by a function name followed by a list. Finally there is a right parenthesis. The function name specifies a function that has two arguments. For example:

```
(reduce 'cons '(oranges pizzas men))
(reduce 'plus '(4 5 9 5 6))
(reduce 'times '(fishes 4 bicycles 9))
(reduce 'append '(cars planes (aardvarks aardvarks)))
```

*(The last two examples assume certain things that need to be true: the variables fishes and bicycles need to have numeric values; the variables cars and planes need to have values that are lists for the example to work.)*

---

### The subset-form:

The subset-form consists of a left parenthesis followed by the word SUBSET followed by a unary predicate. This is followed by a list of elements and finally there is a right parenthesis. For example:

```
(SUBSET 'ODDP '(men cars planes))
(SUBSET 'NUMBERP '(fishes 2 oranges 7))
(SUBSET 'LISTP '((FISHES BLUE) (RED MEN)))
```

---

### The let-form:

The let-form consists of a left parenthesis followed by the word LET followed by a list of local variables followed by a number of forms. Finally, there is a right parenthesis. A local variable is specified as a list of the variable name which is a symbol and an initial value. Examples of let-forms are:

```
(LET ((ORANGES FISHES)) MEN)
(LET ((BICYCLES 3) (PIZZAS 'MEN)) 2 9 CARS)
(LET ((YELLOW SKY) (FISHES BLUE)) (MEN AARDVARKS))
(LET ((APPLES APPLES) (FISHES SHARKS)) ((MEN CARS) (MEN BLUE)))
```

*(The last example illustrates the necessity of representing some of the semantics in addition to the syntax: it has an erroneous declaration of the local variable APPLES, since the variable will not have an initial value, the assignment will give an error when executed.)*

---

### The setf-form:

The SETF-form consists of a list of three components: the keyword SETF, followed by a variable name, followed by a value. The variable name is a symbol; the value can be an expression. Examples of SETF-FORMs are:

```
(SETF X23 3.1415) ; X23 is assigned the value 3.1415
(SETF BBB (A B C)) ; BBB is assigned the value of the expression (A B C)
(SETF BAD ORANGES) ; BAD is assigned the value of ORANGES
```

However, the following is not a valid SETF-form because it cannot be used to change the value of a constant or a number:

```
(SETF 123 ORANGES) ; invalid example, because 123 is not a variable
(SETF ABC 908) ; invalid example if ABC is a constant
```

---

### The assoc-form:

The ASSOC-form is written as a list with three components: the keyword ASSOC, followed by a constant or a variable, followed by a list or a variable representing a list. For example:

```
(ASSOC 'B '(ORANGES PIZZAS)) ; constant and a list
(ASSOC ABC '(ORANGES PIZZAS)) ; variable and a list
(ASSOC ABC XYZ) ; two variables
(ASSOC ABC 'XYZ) ; invalid example because the second
; parameter is not a list
```

---

### Floating Point Numbers:

Floating point numbers are written as: (1) decimal numbers (2) scientific notation. Decimal numbers consist of a sequence of digits followed by a decimal point followed by some more digits. Scientific notation consists of an optional sign, followed by some digits, optionally followed a decimal point and more digits, followed by an exponent. Examples of floating point numbers are:

```
1.0 ; a floating point number in decimal notation
OE0 ; floating point zero in scientific notation
-.1 ; a negative floating point number
+.1 ; a positive floating point number
0.0 ; a floating point number in decimal notation
0. ; NOT a floating point number, but an INTEGER
```

---

### The with-open-file form:

The WITH-OPEN-FILE form consists of a list with three components: the keyword WITH-OPEN-FILE, a list consisting of a variable name, a pathname and optional declarations, and finally, an expression. For example:

```
(with-open-file (abc "/home/mittal/lisp-init.lisp" :direction :input) nil)
(with-open-file (xyz "/home/paris/.login" :direction :output
                                     :if-exists :supersede) (a b c))
(with-open-file (xyz "/home/mittal/ees.lisp") 'DONE)
```

However, the following is not a valid WITH-OPEN-FILE form because instead of a variable, it has a number as a parameter.

```
(with-open-file (453 "/home/mittal/ees.lisp") 'DONE)
```

---

### The defstruct-form:

The DEFSTRUCT form consists of a list as follows: the first element of the list is the keyword DEFSTRUCT, followed by a NAME-EXPRESSION. This can be followed by an optional documentation string. The remaining elements consist of SLOT-DESCRIPTORS. The NAME-EXPRESSION can be either a symbol, or a list consisting of a name and optional keyword arguments. Each SLOT-DESCRIPTOR consists of a slot-name, optionally followed by default values. For example:

```
(defstruct ABC XYZ) ; a DEFSTRUCT form with name ABC and one slot XYZ
(defstruct BGF "Oranges Fishes" MMM GGG) ; a DEFSTRUCT form with name
                                           ; BGF, two slots and a
                                           ; documentation string
(defstruct (GF56) GGG XYZ) ; a defstruct form with name GF56 and two
                           ; slots
(defstruct (VIB :conc-name nil) YYY) ; a DEFSTRUCT form with the keyword
                                     ; argument :CONC-NAME defined
(defstruct (GAD :predicate "CHECK" :constructor "HHH") LKJ) ; a DEFSTRUCT
                                                             ; form with two keyword arguments defined
```

---

### The defconstant-form:

The DEFCONSTANT form consists of a list with the keyword DEFCONSTANT, followed by a variable-name, followed by a lisp expression and finally followed by an optional documentation string. For example:

```
(defconstant ABC 453)
(defconstant R2D2 '(A 6 7 B))
(defconstant XYZ 567 "this is a string")
```

However, the following expression would be an invalid example of a DEFCONSTANT-form:

```
(defconstant 456 '(a b c))
```

because 456 is not a valid variable name. Another invalid example of a DEFCONSTANT-form is:

```
(defconstant (car '(a b c)) 711)
```

This is because "(car '(a b c))" is not a variable name. Thus, a DEFCONSTANT-form differs from a SETF-form in that the second element of the list must be a variable name in a DEFCONSTANT-form.

*(Actually, a SETF-form and DEFCONSTANT-form differ in another way as well: a SETF-form cannot have a documentation string; the system did not detect it here because it tried to classify a modified version of the last example and was successful with the SETF-form.)*

---

### The dotimes-form:

The DOTIMES-form consists of a list with the following components: the keyword DOTIMES, followed by the ITERATION-LIST, followed by PROGN-BLOCK.<sup>1</sup> The ITERATION-LIST consists of a variable name and a lisp expression, which is not a quoted constant.<sup>2</sup> For example:

```
(dotimes (abc 4) <some lisp code here>)
(dotimes (r2d2 (a b c d)) <some lisp code here>)
(dotimes (b xyz) <some lisp code here>)
(dotimes (b 'xyz) <some lisp code here>) ; invalid example, because
                                         ; the second parameter in the
                                         ; ITERATION-LIST is a
                                         ; quoted constant
```

---

### The endp-form:

The ENDP form consists of a list with two components: the keyword ENDP followed by a list or a variable. For example:

```
(ENDP (A B C)) ; example of ENDP with a list
(ENDP XYZ)    ; ENDP and a variable name
(ENDP 'ABC)   ; invalid example, since 'ABC is not a list
(ENDP NIL)    ; valid example, since NIL is a list
(ENDP (AB) (CD)) ; invalid example because number of arguments must
                  ; be one
```

---

<sup>1</sup>In many Lisp constructs, the body of the code is not essential -- our system currently indicates these segments of code as PROGN-blocks.

<sup>2</sup>The initial representation of the DOTIMES-block omitted the result-form, an optional part of the specification that cannot be explained purely syntactically.